



# 2018 RAM CHASSIS CAB USER GUIDE



## IMPORTANT

Get warranty and other information online – you can review and print or download a copy of the Owner's Manual, Navigation/Uconnect manuals and the limited warranties provided by FCA US LLC for your vehicle by visiting [www.mopar.com](http://www.mopar.com) (U.S.) or [www.owners.mopar.ca](http://www.owners.mopar.ca) (Canada). Click on the applicable link in the "Popular Topics" area of the [www.mopar.com](http://www.mopar.com) (U.S.) or [www.owners.mopar.ca](http://www.owners.mopar.ca) (Canada) homepage and follow the instructions to select the applicable year, make and model of your vehicle.

This User Guide is intended to familiarize you with the important features of your vehicle. Your Owner's Manual, Navigation/Uconnect manuals and Warranty Booklet can be found by visiting the website on the back cover of your User Guide. We hope you find these resources useful. U.S. residents can purchase replacement kits by visiting [www.techauthority.com](http://www.techauthority.com) and Canadian residents can purchase replacement kits by calling 1 800 387-1143.

 **Warning:** Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-road highway motor can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to: [www.p65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle](http://www.p65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle).



**RAM**  
COMMERCIAL

Congratulations on selecting your new FCA US LLC vehicle. Be assured that it represents precision workmanship, distinctive styling, and high quality.

ALWAYS drive safely and pay attention to the road. ALWAYS drive safely with your hands on the steering wheel. You have full responsibility and assume all risks related to the use of the features and applications in this vehicle. Only use the features and applications when it is safe to do so. Failure to do so may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.

This guide illustrates and describes the operation of features and equipment that are either standard or optional on this vehicle. This guide may also include a description of features and equipment that are no longer available or were not ordered on this vehicle. Please disregard any features and equipment described in this guide that are not available on this vehicle. FCA US LLC reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications and/or make additions to or improve-

ments to its products without imposing any obligation upon itself to install them on products previously manufactured.

This User Guide has been prepared to help you quickly become acquainted with the important features of your vehicle. It contains most things you will need to operate and maintain the vehicle, including emergency information.

When it comes to service, remember that your authorized dealer knows your vehicle best, has factory-trained technicians and genuine MOPAR® parts, and cares about your satisfaction.

## HOW TO FIND YOUR OWNER'S MANUAL ONLINE

This publication has been prepared as a reference item to help you quickly become acquainted with the most important features and processes of your vehicle. It contains most things you will need to operate and maintain the vehicle, including emergency information and procedures.

**This User Guide is not a replacement for the full Owner's Manual, and does not fully cover every operation and procedure possible with your vehicle.**

For more detailed descriptions of the topics discussed in this User Guide, as well as information covering features and processes not covered in this User Guide, the full vehicle Owner's Manual can be accessed for free online in a printer-friendly PDF format.

**To get the full Owner's Manual or applicable supplement for your vehicle, follow the appropriate web address below:**

[www.mopar.com/en-us/care/owners-manual.html](http://www.mopar.com/en-us/care/owners-manual.html)  
(U.S. Residents)

[www.owners.mopar.ca](http://www.owners.mopar.ca) (Canadian Residents)

FCA US LLC is committed to protecting our environment and natural resources. By converting from paper to electronic delivery for the majority of the user information for your vehicle, together we greatly reduce the demand for tree-based products and lessen the stress on our environment. ♻️

## HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

### Essential Information

Each time direction instructions (left/right or forwards/backwards) about the vehicle are given, these must be intended as regarding an occupant in the driver's seat. Special cases not complying with this rule will be properly specified in the text.

The figures in this User Guide are provided by way of example only: this might imply that some details of the image do not correspond to the actual arrangement of your vehicle.

In addition, the User Guide has been conceived considering vehicles with the steering wheel on the left side; it is therefore possible that in vehicles with the steering wheel on the right side, the position or construction of some controls is not exactly mirror-like with respect to the figure.

To identify the chapter with the information needed you can consult the index at the end of this User Guide.

Chapters can be rapidly identified with dedicated graphic tabs, at the side of each odd page. A few pages further there is a key for getting to know the chapter order and the relevant symbols in the tabs. There is always a textual indication of the current chapter at the side of each even page.

### Symbols

Some vehicle components have colored labels whose symbols indicate precautions to be observed when using this component.

### WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS

While reading this User Guide you will find a series of WARNINGS to be followed to prevent incorrect use of components which could cause accidents or injuries.

There are also CAUTIONS that must be followed to prevent against procedures that could result in damage to your vehicle.

## VAN CONVERSIONS/CAMPERS

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not apply to body modifications or special equipment installed by van conversion/camper manufacturers/body builders. U.S. residents refer to the Warranty Information book, Section 2.1.C. Canadian residents refer to the "What Is Not Covered" section of the Warranty Information book. Such equipment includes video monitors, VCRs, heaters, stoves, refrigerators, etc. For warranty coverage and service on these items, contact the applicable manufacturer.

Operating instructions for the special equipment installed by the conversion/camper manufacturer should also be supplied with your vehicle. If these instructions are missing, please contact your authorized dealer for assistance in obtaining replacement documents from the applicable manufacturer.

For information on the Body Builder's Guide refer to [www.rambodybuilder.com](http://www.rambodybuilder.com). This website contains dimensional and technical specifications for your vehicle. It is intended for Second Stage Manufacturer's technical support. For service issues, contact your authorized dealer.

|                                              |                                                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>GRAPHICAL TABLE OF CONTENTS</b>           |   |
| <b>GETTING TO KNOW YOUR VEHICLE</b>          |  |
| <b>GETTING TO KNOW YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL</b> |  |
| <b>SAFETY</b>                                |  |
| <b>STARTING AND OPERATING</b>                |  |
| <b>IN CASE OF EMERGENCY</b>                  |  |
| <b>SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE</b>             |  |
| <b>TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS</b>              |  |
| <b>MULTIMEDIA</b>                            |  |
| <b>CUSTOMER ASSISTANCE</b>                   |  |
| <b>INDEX</b>                                 |  |



# GRAPHICAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

INSTRUMENT PANEL . . . . .6

INTERIOR. . . . .7



## INSTRUMENT PANEL



**Instrument Panel**

- 1 — Air Vents
- 2 — Multifunction Lever
- 3 — Steering Wheel

- 4 — Instrument Cluster
- 5 — Gear Selector
- 6 — Radio

## INTERIOR



Interior

- 1 — Door Locks/Window Switches
- 2 — Seats
- 3 — Transfer Case

- 4 — Switch Panel
- 5 — Storage Compartment





# GETTING TO KNOW YOUR VEHICLE

## VEHICLE USER GUIDE — IF EQUIPPED . . .11

### KEYS . . . . .12

Key Fobs . . . . .12

### IGNITION SWITCH . . . . .14

Wireless Ignition Node (WIN) —

If Equipped. . . . .14

Keyless Push Button Ignition —

If Equipped. . . . .15

### REMOTE START — IF EQUIPPED . . . .15

To Enter Remote Start Mode . . . . .15

To Exit Remote Start Mode Without

Driving The Vehicle . . . . .16

To Exit Remote Start Mode And Drive

The Vehicle. . . . .16

General Information . . . . .16

### VEHICLE SECURITY ALARM . . . . .16

To Arm The System . . . . .16

To Disarm The System . . . . .17

### DOORS . . . . .18

Keyless Enter-N-Go — Passive Entry . .18

### SEATS . . . . .20

Driver Memory Seat — If Equipped . . . .20

Heated Seats. . . . .23

### HEAD RESTRAINTS . . . . .24

Front Head Restraint Adjustment . . . . .25

Rear Head Restraint Adjustment. . . . .25

Front Head Restraint Removal . . . . .25

Rear Head Restraint Removal. . . . .26

### STEERING WHEEL . . . . .26

Tilt Steering Column . . . . .26

Heated Steering Wheel — If Equipped . .27

### DRIVER ADJUSTABLE PEDALS —

#### IF EQUIPPED . . . . .28

### MIRRORS . . . . .28

Power Folding Outside Mirrors For

Standard And Trailer Tow —

If Equipped. . . . .28

### EXTERIOR LIGHTS . . . . .29

Headlight Switch . . . . .29

Headlights . . . . .30

Multifunction Lever . . . . .30

High/Low Beam Switch . . . . .31

Automatic High Beam Headlamp

Control — If Equipped . . . . .31

Automatic Headlights — If Equipped . .31

Parking Lights And Panel Lights . . . . .32

Headlights On With Wipers (Available

With Automatic Headlights Only). . . . .32

Turn Signals . . . . .32

Lane Change Assist — If Equipped . . . .32

Cargo Light . . . . .32

### WINDSHIELD WIPERS AND WASHERS . .32

Windshield Wipers . . . . .32

Rain Sensing Wipers — If Equipped . .33

### CLIMATE CONTROLS . . . . .35

Automatic Climate Controls With A

Touchscreen . . . . .35

Climate Control Functions . . . . .40

Automatic Temperature Control (ATC) —

If Equipped. . . . .41

Operating Tips . . . . .41

### HOOD . . . . .42

To Open The Hood . . . . .42

To Close The Hood . . . . .43



**UNIVERSAL GARAGE DOOR OPENER  
(HOMELINK) . . . . .43**

|                                                                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Before You Begin Programming<br>HomeLink. . . . .                                 | .43 |
| Erasing All The HomeLink Channels. . .                                            | .44 |
| Identifying Whether You Have A Rolling<br>Code Or Non-Rolling Code Device . . . . | .44 |

|                                                            |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Programming HomeLink To A Garage<br>Door Opener . . . . .  | .44 |
| Programming HomeLink To A<br>Miscellaneous Device. . . . . | .46 |
| Reprogramming A Single HomeLink<br>Button. . . . .         | .46 |
| General Information . . . . .                              | .47 |

**INTERNAL EQUIPMENT . . . . .47**

|                                          |     |
|------------------------------------------|-----|
| Electrical Power Outlets . . . . .       | .47 |
| Power Inverter — If Equipped . . . . .   | .48 |
| Auxiliary Switches — If Equipped . . . . | .49 |

## VEHICLE USER GUIDE — IF EQUIPPED

Access your Owner's Information right through your Uconnect 4C or 4C NAV touch-screen system — If Equipped.

To access the Vehicle User Guide on your Uconnect Touchscreen: Press the Uconnect **Apps** button. From there, press the **Vehicle User Guide** icon on your touchscreen. No Uconnect registration is required.



Uconnect 4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display  
Vehicle User Guide Touchscreen Icon

### NOTE:

Vehicle User Guide features are not available while the vehicle is moving. If you try to access while the vehicle is in motion, the system will display: Feature not available while the vehicle is in motion.

### Pre-Installed Features

|                                          |                                        |
|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| • Your User Guide — Updated in real-time | • Available when and where you need it |
| • Touchscreen convenience                | • Customizable interface               |
| • Maintenance schedules and information  | • Multilingual                         |
| • Comprehensive icon & symbol glossary   |                                        |

Once you launch your Vehicle User Guide, you will be able to explore your warranty information and radio manual when and where you need them. Your Uconnect system displays the Vehicle User Guide on your touchscreen radio to assist in better understanding your vehicle. There's no app to download, no phone to connect and no exter-

nal device needed for playback. Plus, it's updated throughout the year, in real-time, so it never goes out of date.

### Features/Benefits

- Pre-installed on your Uconnect touchscreen radio
- Enhanced search and browsing capability
- Robust NAV application — If Equipped
- Add selected topics to a fast-access Favorites category
- Icon and symbol glossary
- Warranty information
- Crucial driver information and assistance:

|                          |                         |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| • Operating Instructions | • Maintenance Schedules |
| • Warranty Information   | • Emergency Procedures  |
| • Fluid Level Standards  | • 911 Contact and More  |

**Tip:** When viewing a topic, tap the star icon to add it to your Favorites, for easy access in the future.



## KEYS

### Key Fobs

Your vehicle uses either a wireless ignition node system or keyless ignition system. The ignition system consists of a key fob with a Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) and an ignition switch. The keyless ignition system consists of a key fob and Keyless Enter-N-Go button.

#### NOTE:

The key fob may not be found if it is located next to a mobile phone, laptop or other electronic device; these devices may block the key fob's wireless signal.

The key fob operates the ignition switch. Insert the square end of the key fob into the ignition switch located on the instrument panel and rotate to the desired position. It also contains the key fob and an emergency key, which stores in the rear of the key fob.

The emergency key allows for entry into the vehicle should the battery in the vehicle or the key fob go dead. You can keep the emergency key with you when valet parking.

To remove the emergency key, slide the mechanical latch at the top of the key fob sideways with your thumb and then pull the key out with your other hand.

#### NOTE:

When using the emergency key to gain access to your vehicle, be aware that the security alarm may be triggered. Insert the key into the ignition and place the ignition in the ON/RUN mode to disarm the security system.

This Keyless Push Button Ignition key fob allows the driver to operate the ignition switch with the push of a button, as long as the key fob is in the passenger compartment. The Keyless Push Button Ignition has four operating positions, three of which are labeled and will illuminate when in position. The three positions are OFF, ACC, and ON/RUN. The fourth position is START, during start RUN will illuminate. It also contains the key fob and an emergency key, which stores in the rear of the key fob.

The emergency key allows for entry into the vehicle should the battery in the vehicle or the key fob go dead. You can keep the emergency key with you when valet parking.

To remove the emergency key, slide the mechanical latch on the backside of the key fob sideways with your thumb and then pull the key out with your other hand.

#### NOTE:

- When using the emergency key to gain access to your vehicle, be aware that the security alarm may be triggered. Put the nose side (side opposite of the emergency key) of the key fob against the ENGINE START/STOP button and push to disarm the security system.
- You can insert the double-sided emergency key into the door lock cylinder with either side up.

The Remote Keyless Entry system allows you to lock or unlock all doors, and the tailgate as well as activate the Panic Alarm from distances up to approximately 66 ft (20 m) using a key fob with integrated key. The key fob does not need to be pointed at the vehicle to activate the system. Push and release the lock button on the key fob to lock all doors, and the tailgate. The turn signal lights will flash and the horn will chirp to acknowledge the signal.

**NOTE:**

Inserting the key fob with integrated key into the ignition switch disables the system from responding to any button pushes from that key fob. Driving at speeds 5 mph (8 km/h) and above disables the system from responding to all key fob buttons for all key fobs.



**WIN Key Fob With Integrated Key**

- 1 — Lock
- 2 — Unlock
- 3 — Remote Start
- 4 — Emergency Key Release
- 5 — Emergency Key



**Passive Entry Key Fob**

- 1 — Air Suspension
- 2 — Unlock
- 3 — Lock
- 4 — Remote Start
- 5 — Panic



## To Unlock The Doors And Tailgate

Push and release the unlock button on the key fob once to unlock the driver's door. Push the unlock button twice within five seconds to unlock all doors, and the tailgate. The turn signal lights will flash to acknowledge the unlock signal. The illuminated entry system will also turn on.

### NOTE:

The instrument cluster display or Uconnect Settings are setup for driver door first, otherwise this will unlock all doors.

## To Lock The Doors And Tailgate

Push and release the lock button on the key fob to lock all doors, and the tailgate. The turn signal lights will flash and the horn will chirp to acknowledge the signal.

## Using The Panic Alarm

To turn the Panic Alarm feature on or off, push the Panic button on the key fob. When the Panic Alarm is activated, the turn signals will flash, the horn will pulse on and off, and the interior lights will turn on.

The Panic Alarm will stay on for three minutes unless you turn it off by either pushing the Panic button a second time or drive the vehicle at a speed of 15 mph (24 km/h) or greater.

### NOTE:

- The interior lights will turn off if you place the ignition in the ACC or ON/RUN position while the Panic Alarm is activated. However, the exterior lights and horn will remain on.
- You may need to be less than 35 ft (11 m) from the vehicle when using the key fob to turn off the Panic Alarm due to the radio frequency noises emitted by the system.

## General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all radio frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### NOTE:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## IGNITION SWITCH

### Wireless Ignition Node (WIN) — If Equipped

The Wireless Ignition Node (WIN) operates similar to an ignition switch. It has four operating positions, three with detents and one that is spring-loaded. The detent positions are OFF, ACC, and ON/RUN. The START position is a spring-loaded momentary contact position. When released from the START position, the switch automatically returns to the ON/RUN position.

## Keyless Push Button Ignition — If Equipped

This feature allows the driver to operate the ignition switch with the push of a button as long as the Remote Keyless Entry key fob is in the passenger compartment.

The Keyless Push Button Ignition has four operating positions; three of which are labeled and will illuminate when in position. The three positions are OFF, ACC, and ON/RUN. The fourth position is START, during start RUN will illuminate.

### NOTE:

In case the ignition switch does not change with the push of a button, the key fob may have a low or dead battery. In this situation, a back up method can be used to operate the ignition switch. Put the nose side (side opposite of the emergency key) of the key fob against the ENGINE START/STOP button, with your foot applied on the brake pedal, and push to operate the ignition switch.



Keyless Push Button Ignition

## REMOTE START — IF EQUIPPED

### To Enter Remote Start Mode

Push and release the Remote Start button on the key fob twice within five seconds. The parking lights will flash, vehicle doors will lock, and the horn will chirp twice (if programmed). Once the vehicle has started, the engine will run for 15 minutes.

### NOTE:

- If your power door locks were unlocked, Remote Start will automatically lock the doors.
- If an engine fault is present or fuel level is low, the vehicle will start and then shut down in 10 seconds.
- The park lamps will turn on and remain on during Remote Start mode.
- For security, power window and power sunroof operation (if equipped) are disabled when the vehicle is in the Remote Start mode.
- The engine can be started two consecutive times (two 15-minute cycles) with the key fob. However, the ignition must be placed in the ON/RUN position before you can repeat the start sequence for a third cycle.



## To Exit Remote Start Mode Without Driving The Vehicle

Push and release the remote start button one time or allow the engine to run for the entire 15-minute cycle.

### NOTE:

To avoid unintentional shutdowns, the system will disable with a one time push of the remote start button for two seconds after receiving a valid remote start request.

## To Exit Remote Start Mode And Drive The Vehicle

Before the end of the 15-minute cycle, push and release the unlock button on the key fob to unlock the doors and disarm the vehicle security alarm system (if equipped). Then, prior to the end of the 15-minute cycle, cycle the ignition to the ON/RUN position.

## General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all radio frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### NOTE:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## VEHICLE SECURITY ALARM

The vehicle security alarm monitors the vehicle doors and ignition for unauthorized operation. When the vehicle security alarm is activated, interior switches for door locks are disabled. The system provides both audible and visible signals for the first three minutes. The horn will sound, the headlights will turn on, the park lamps and/or turn signals will flash and vehicle security light will flash repeatedly. For an additional 15 minutes only, the headlights will turn on, the park lamps and/or turn signals, and vehicle security light will flash.

## To Arm The System

Follow these steps to arm the vehicle security alarm:

1. Remove the key from the ignition system (refer to "Starting The Engine" in "Starting And Operating" for further information).
  - For vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go — Ignition, make sure the vehicle ignition system is "OFF."

- For vehicles not equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go — Ignition, make sure the vehicle ignition system is "OFF" and the key is physically removed from the ignition.

2. Perform one of the following methods to lock the vehicle:

- Push lock button on the interior power door lock switch with the driver and/or passenger door open.
- Push the lock button on the exterior Passive Entry Door Handle with a valid key fob available in the same exterior zone (refer to "Keyless Enter- N-Go — Passive Entry" in "Getting To Know Your Vehicle" for further information).
- Push the lock button on the key fob.

3. If any doors are open, close them.

The vehicle security alarm will set when you use the power door locks, or use the key fob to lock the doors. After all the doors are locked and closed, the vehicle security light, in the instrument panel cluster, will flash rapidly for about 16 seconds to indicate that the alarm

is being set. After the alarm is set, the vehicle security light will flash at a slower rate to indicate that the system is armed.

## To Disarm The System

The vehicle security alarm can be disarmed using any of the following methods:

1. Push the unlock button on the key fob.
2. Grasp the Passive Entry Unlock Door Handle with a valid key fob within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the passive entry door handle. If equipped, refer to "Keyless Enter-N-Go — Passive Entry" in "Getting To Know Your Vehicle" for further information.
3. Cycle the ignition out of the OFF position.
  - For vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go — Ignition, push the Keyless Ignition START/STOP button (requires at least one valid key fob in the vehicle).
  - For vehicles not equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go, insert a valid key into the ignition switch and turn the key to the ON position.

The vehicle security alarm is designed to protect your vehicle. However, you can create conditions where the system will give you a false alarm. If one of the previously described arming sequences has occurred, the vehicle security alarm will arm regardless of whether you are in the vehicle or not. If you remain in the vehicle and open a door, the alarm will sound. If this occurs, disarm the vehicle security alarm.

If the vehicle security alarm is armed and the battery becomes disconnected, the vehicle security alarm will remain armed when the battery is reconnected; the exterior lights will flash, and the horn will sound. If this occurs, disarm the vehicle security alarm.



## DOORS

### Keyless Enter-N-Go — Passive Entry

The Passive Entry system is an enhancement to the vehicle's Remote Keyless Entry system and a feature of Keyless Enter-N-Go. This feature allows you to lock and unlock the vehicle's door(s) without having to push the key fob lock or unlock buttons.

#### NOTE:

- Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner's Manual for further information.
- If wearing gloves on your hands, or if it has been raining/snowing on the Passive Entry door handle, the unlock sensitivity can be affected, resulting in a slower response time.
- If the vehicle is unlocked by Passive Entry and no door is opened within 60 seconds, the vehicle will re-lock and if equipped will arm the security alarm.

- The vehicle's security alarm can be armed/disarmed by pushing the passive entry key fob lock/unlock buttons (if equipped).
- The key fob may not be able to be detected by the vehicle passive entry system if it is located next to a mobile phone, laptop or other electronic device; these devices may block the key fob's wireless signal and prevent the passive entry handle from locking/unlocking the vehicle.

#### To Unlock From The Driver's Side:

With a valid Passive Entry key fob within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the driver door handle, grab the front driver door handle to unlock the driver's door automatically. The interior door panel lock knob will raise when the door is unlocked.



**Grab The Door Handle To Unlock**

#### NOTE:

If “Unlock All Doors 1st Press” is programmed, all doors will unlock when you grab hold of the front driver's door handle. To select between “Unlock Driver Door 1st Press” and “Unlock All Doors 1st Press,” refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner's Manual for further information.

### To Unlock From The Passenger Side:

With a valid Passive Entry key fob within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the passenger door handle, grab the front passenger door handle to unlock all doors automatically. The interior door panel lock knob will raise when the door is unlocked.

#### NOTE:

All doors will unlock when the front passenger door handle is grabbed regardless of the driver's door unlock preference setting ("Unlock Driver Door 1st Press" or "Unlock All Doors 1st Press").

### Preventing Inadvertent Locking Of Passive Entry Key Fob In Vehicle:

To minimize the possibility of unintentionally locking a Passive Entry key fob inside your vehicle, the Passive Entry system is equipped with an automatic door unlock feature which will function if the ignition switch is in the OFF position.

If one of the vehicle doors is open and the door panel switch is used to lock the vehicle, once all open doors have been closed the vehicle checks the inside and outside of the

vehicle for any valid Passive Entry key fobs. If one of the vehicle's Passive Entry key fobs is detected inside the vehicle, and no other valid Passive Entry key fobs are detected outside the vehicle, the Passive Entry System automatically unlocks all vehicle doors and chirps the horn three times (on the third attempt ALL doors will lock and the Passive Entry key fob can be locked in the vehicle).

### To Lock The Vehicle's Doors:

With one of the vehicle's Passive Entry key fobs within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the driver or passenger front door handles, push the door handle lock button to lock all doors.



**Push The Button To Lock**

Do NOT grab the door handle when pushing the door handle lock button. This could unlock the door(s).



**Do NOT Grab The Handle When Locking**

#### NOTE:

- After pushing the door handle lock button, you must wait two seconds before you can lock or unlock the doors, using either Passive Entry door handle. This is done to allow you to check if the vehicle is locked by pulling the door handle, without the vehicle reacting and unlocking.
- The Passive Entry system will not operate if the key fob battery is dead.



The vehicle doors can also be locked by using the key fob lock button or the lock button located on the vehicle's interior door panel.

### General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all radio frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### NOTE:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## SEATS

Seats are a part of the Occupant Restraint System of the vehicle.

### WARNING!

- It is dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.
- Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.
- Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.

### Driver Memory Seat — If Equipped

This feature allows the driver to store up to two different memory profiles for easy recall through a memory switch. Each memory profile contains desired position settings for the driver's seat, side mirrors, adjustable pedals (if equipped) and a set of desired radio sta-

tion presets. Your remote keyless entry key fob can also be programmed to recall the same positions when the unlock button is pushed.

### NOTE:

Your vehicle is equipped with two key fobs, one key fob can be linked to memory position 1 and the other key fob can be linked to memory position 2.

The memory seat buttons are located on the outboard side of the driver's seat cushion.



**Memory Seat Button Location**

## Programming The Memory Feature

To create a new memory profile, perform the following:

1. Cycle the vehicle's ignition to the ON/RUN position (do not start the engine).
2. Adjust all memory profile settings to desired preferences (i.e., driver's seat, outside mirrors and radio station presets).
3. Push and release the set (S) button on the memory switch.
4. Within five seconds, push and release either of the memory buttons (1) or (2). The instrument cluster display will show which memory position has been set.

### NOTE:

- Memory profiles can be set without the vehicle in PARK, but the vehicle must be in PARK to recall a memory profile.
- To set a memory profile to your key fob, refer to "Linking And Unlinking The Remote Keyless Entry Key Fob To Memory" in this section.

## Linking And Unlinking The Remote Keyless Entry Key Fob To Memory

Your key fobs can be programmed to recall one of two pre-programmed memory profiles by pushing the unlock button on the key fob.

### NOTE:

Before programming your key fobs to memory the feature has to be selected.

- If your vehicle is equipped with a touch-screen, you must select the "Memory Linked To Fob" feature through the Uconnect system. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Multimedia" in the Owner's Manual for further information.
- If your vehicle is not equipped with a touch-screen, you must select the "Key Fob Linked To Memory" feature through the instrument cluster display. Refer to "Instrument Cluster Display" in "Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel" in the Owner's Manual for further information.

To program your key fobs, perform the following:

1. Cycle the vehicle's ignition to the OFF position.
2. Select desired memory profile (1) or (2).

### NOTE:

If a memory profile has not already been set, refer to "Programming The Memory Feature" for instructions on how to set a memory profile.

3. Once the profile has been recalled, push and release the set (S) button on the memory switch, then push and release button (1) or (2) accordingly. "Memory Profile Set" (1 or 2) will display in the instrument cluster display.
4. Push and release the lock button on the key fob within 10 seconds.

### NOTE:

Your key fobs can be unlinked to your memory settings by pushing the set (S) button, and within 10 seconds, followed by pushing the unlock button on the key fob.



## Memory Position Recall

### NOTE:

- For vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission, the vehicle speed must be lower than 5 mph (8 km/h) to recall memory positions. If a recall is attempted when the vehicle speed is greater than 5 mph (8 km/h), a message will be displayed in the instrument cluster display.
- For vehicles equipped with a manual transmission, the vehicle speed must be at 0 mph (0 km/h) to recall memory positions. If a recall is attempted with the vehicle speed above 0 mph (0 km/h), a message will appear in the instrument cluster display.

### Driver One Memory Position Recall

- To recall the memory settings for driver one using the memory switch, push memory button (1) on the memory switch.
- To recall the memory settings for driver one using the key fob, push the unlock button on the key fob linked to memory position 1.

### Driver Two Memory Position Recall

- To recall the memory setting for driver two using the memory switch, push memory button (2) on the memory switch.
- To recall the memory settings for driver two using the key fob, push the unlock button on the key fob linked to memory position 2.

A recall can be cancelled by pushing any of the memory buttons during a recall (S, 1, or 2). When a recall is cancelled, the driver's seat and the power pedals (if equipped) stop moving. A delay of one second will occur before another recall can be selected.

## Easy Entry/Exit Seat

This feature provides automatic driver's seat positioning to enhance driver mobility when entering and exiting the vehicle.

The distance the driver's seat moves depends on where you have the driver's seat positioned when you remove the key fob from the ignition (or change the ignition to OFF, for vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go).

- When you remove the key fob from the ignition (or change the ignition to OFF, for vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go), the driver's seat will move about

2.4 inches (60 mm) rearward if the driver's seat position is greater than or equal to 2.7 inches (67.7 mm) forward of the rear stop. The seat will return to its previously set position when you place the ignition into the ACC or RUN position.

- When you remove the key fob from the ignition (or change the ignition to OFF, for vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go), the driver's seat will move to a position 0.3 inches (7.7 mm) forward of the rear stop if the driver's seat position is between 0.9 inches and 2.7 inches (22.7 mm and 67.7 mm) forward of the rear stop. The seat will return to its previously set position when you place the ignition to the ACC or RUN position.
- The Easy Entry/Easy Exit feature is disabled when the driver's seat position is less than 0.9 inches (22.7 mm) forward of the rear stop. At this position, there is no benefit to the driver by moving the seat for Easy Exit or Easy Entry.

Each stored memory setting will have an associated Easy Entry and Easy Exit position.

#### NOTE:

The Easy Entry/Exit feature is not enabled when the vehicle is delivered from the factory. The Easy Entry/Exit feature is enabled (or later disabled) through the programmable features in the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner’s Manual for further information.

## Heated Seats

On some models, the front and rear seats may be equipped with heaters located in the seat cushions and seat backs.

#### WARNING!

- Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical condition must exercise care when using the seat heater. It may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time.
- Do not place anything on the seat or seatback that insulates against heat,

#### WARNING!

such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. Sitting in a seat that has been overheated could cause serious burns due to the increased surface temperature of the seat.

### Front Heated Seats

The front heated seats control buttons are located within the climate or controls screen of the touchscreen.

- Press the heated seat button  once to turn the HI setting on.
- Press the heated seat button  a second time to turn the LO setting on.
- Press the heated seat button  a third time to turn the heating elements off.

If the HI-level setting is selected, the system will automatically switch to LO-level after approximately 60 minutes of continuous operation. At that time, the display will change from HI to LO, indicating the change. The LO-level setting will turn off automatically after approximately 45 minutes.

#### NOTE:

The engine must be running for the heated seats to operate.

### Vehicles Equipped With Remote Start

On models that are equipped with remote start, the heated seats can be programmed to come on during a remote start.

If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in your Owner’s Manual for further information.

### Rear Heated Seats

On some models, the two outboard seats are equipped with heated seats. The heated seat switches for these seats are located on the rear of the center console.

There are two heated seat switches that allow the rear passengers to operate the seats independently. You can choose from HI, LO or OFF heat settings. Amber indicator lights in each switch indicate the level of heat in use. Two indicator lights will illuminate for HI, one for LO and none for OFF.



- Push the heated seat button  once to turn the HI setting on.
- Push the heated seat button  a second time to turn the LO setting on.
- Push the heated seat button  a third time to turn the heating elements off.

**NOTE:**

- Once a heat setting is selected, heat will be felt within two to five minutes.
- The engine must be running for the heated seats to operate.

When the HI-level setting is selected, the heater will provide a boosted heat level during the first four minutes of operation. Then, the heat output will drop to the normal HI-level. If the HI-level setting is selected, the system will automatically switch to LO-level after approximately 60 minutes of continuous operation. At that time, the number of illuminated LEDs changes from two to one, indicating the change. The LO-level setting will turn OFF automatically after approximately 45 minutes.

### Ventilated Seats — If Equipped

Located in the seat cushion are small fans that draw the air from the passenger compartment and pull air through fine perforations in the seat cover to help keep the driver and front passenger cooler in higher ambient temperatures. The fans operate at two speeds, HI and LO.

The front ventilated seats control buttons are located within the climate or controls screen of the touchscreen.

- Press the ventilated seat button  once to choose HI.
- Press the ventilated seat button  a second time to choose LO.
- Press the ventilated seat button  a third time to turn the ventilated seat OFF.

**NOTE:**

The engine must be running for the ventilated seats to operate.

### Vehicles Equipped With Remote Start

On models that are equipped with remote start, the ventilated seats can be programmed to come on during a remote start.

If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in your Owner’s Manual for further information.

## HEAD RESTRAINTS

Head restraints are designed to reduce the risk of injury by restricting head movement in the event of a rear impact. Head restraints should be adjusted so that the top of the head restraint is located above the top of your ear.

### WARNING!

- All occupants, including the driver, should not operate a vehicle or sit in a vehicle’s seat until the head restraints are placed in their proper positions in order to minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.
- Head restraints should never be adjusted while the vehicle is in motion. Driving a vehicle with the head restraints improperly adjusted or removed could cause serious injury or death in the event of a collision.

## Front Head Restraint Adjustment

To raise the head restraint, pull upward on the head restraint. To lower the head restraint, push the adjustment button located on the base of the head restraint and push downward on the head restraint.



**Head Restraint**

- 1 — Release Button  
2 — Adjustment Button

### NOTE:

Do not reposition the head restraint 180 degrees to the incorrect position in an attempt to gain additional clearance to the back of the head.

## Rear Head Restraint Adjustment

The rear seats are equipped with adjustable and removable head restraints. To raise the head restraint, pull upward on the head restraint. To lower the head restraint, push the adjustment button located on the base of the head restraint and push downward on the head restraint.

### NOTE:

- The rear center head restraint (Crew Cab and Quad Cab) has only one adjustment position that is used to aid in the routing of a tether. Refer to “Occupant Restraints” in “Safety” in the Owner’s Manual for further information.
- Do not reposition the head restraint 180 degrees to the incorrect position in an attempt to gain additional clearance to the back of the head.

## Front Head Restraint Removal

To remove the head restraint, raise it up as far as it can go. Then, push the adjustment button and the release button at the base of each post while pulling the head restraint up. To reinstall the head restraint, put the head restraint posts into the holes. Then, adjust it to the appropriate height.

### NOTE:

Do not reposition the head restraint 180 degrees to the incorrect position in an attempt to gain additional clearance to the back of the head.

### WARNING!

- A loose head restraint thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could cause serious injury or death to occupants of the vehicle. Always securely stow removed head restraints in a location outside the occupant compartment.
- ALL the head restraints MUST be reinstalled in the vehicle to properly protect the occupants. Follow the re-installation



**WARNING!**

instructions above prior to operating the vehicle or occupying a seat.

**Rear Head Restraint Removal**

To remove the head restraint, push the adjustment button and the release button while pulling upward on the whole assembly. To reinstall the head restraint, put the head restraint posts into the holes and adjust it to the appropriate height.

**NOTE:**

To remove outboard restraints, the rear seat bottom must be folded up.

**WARNING!**

- A loose head restraint thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could cause serious injury or death to occupants of the vehicle. Always securely stow removed head restraints in a location outside the occupant compartment.
- ALL the head restraints MUST be reinstalled in the vehicle to properly protect the occupants. Follow the re-installation instructions above prior to operating the vehicle or occupying a seat.

**STEERING WHEEL****Tilt Steering Column**

This feature allows you to tilt the steering column upward or downward. The tilt lever is located on the steering column, below the multifunction lever.

**Tilt Lever Location**

- 1 — Adjustable Pedal Switch  
2 — Tilt Lever

Pull the lever toward the steering wheel to unlock the steering column. With one hand firmly on the steering wheel, move the steering column up or down, as desired. Release the lever to lock the steering column firmly in place.

## WARNING!

Do not adjust the steering column while driving. Adjusting the steering column while driving or driving with the steering column unlocked, could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle. Failure to follow this warning may result in serious injury or death.

## Heated Steering Wheel — If Equipped

The steering wheel contains a heating element that helps warm your hands in cold weather. The heated steering wheel has only one temperature setting. Once the heated steering wheel has been turned on, it will operate for an average of 80 minutes before automatically shutting off. This time may vary based on the temperature of the surrounding environment or the heated steering wheel may not turn on when it is already warm.

The heated steering wheel control button is located on the center instrument panel below the climate controls. There are also buttons located within the climate or controls screen of the touchscreen.

- Press the heated steering wheel button  once to turn the heating element on.
- Press the heated steering wheel button  a second time to turn the heating element off.

### NOTE:

The engine must be running for the heated steering wheel to operate.

### Vehicles Equipped With Remote Start

On models that are equipped with remote start, the heated steering wheel can be programmed to come on during a remote start.

This feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner’s Manual for further information.

## WARNING!

- Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions must exercise care when using the steering wheel heater. It may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods.
- Do not place anything on the steering wheel that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or steering wheel covers of any type and material. This may cause the steering wheel heater to overheat.



## DRIVER ADJUSTABLE PEDALS — IF EQUIPPED

The adjustable pedals system is designed to allow a greater range of driver comfort for steering wheel tilt and seat position. This feature allows the brake, accelerator, and clutch pedals (if equipped) to move toward or away from the driver to provide improved position with the steering wheel.

The adjustable pedal switch is located to the left side of the steering column.

- The pedals can be adjusted with the ignition OFF.
- The pedals **cannot** be adjusted when the vehicle is in REVERSE or when the Speed Control System is on. The following messages will appear on vehicles equipped with an instrument cluster display if the pedals are attempted to be adjusted when the system is locked out: “Adjustable Pedal Disabled — Cruise Control Engaged” or “Adjustable Pedal Disabled — Vehicle In Reverse”.

### NOTE:

- Always adjust the pedals to a position that allows full pedal travel.
- Further small adjustments may be necessary to find the best possible seat/pedal position.
- For vehicles equipped with Driver Memory Seat, you can use your remote keyless entry key fob or the memory switch on the driver's door trim panel to return the adjustable pedals to pre-programmed positions. Refer to “Driver Memory Seat” in “Getting To Know Your Vehicle” for further information.

### WARNING!

Do not adjust the pedals while the vehicle is moving. You could lose control and have an accident. Always adjust the pedals while the vehicle is parked.

### CAUTION!

Do not place any article under the adjustable pedals or impede its ability to move, as it may cause damage to the pedal controls. Pedal travel may become limited if movement is stopped by an obstruction in the adjustable pedal's path.

## MIRRORS

### Power Folding Outside Mirrors For Standard And Trailer Tow — If Equipped

If equipped with power folding mirrors, they can be electrically folded rearward and unfolded into the drive position.

The switch for the power folding mirrors is located between the power mirror switches L (left) and R (right). Push the switch once and the mirrors will fold in, push the switch a second time and the mirrors will return to the normal driving position.

If the mirror is manually folded after electrically cycled, a potential extra button push is required to get the mirrors back to the home position. If the mirror does not electrically fold, check for ice or dirt build up at the pivot area which can cause excessive drag.



**Power Folding Mirror Switch**

### **Resetting The Power Folding Outside Mirrors**

You may need to reset the power folding mirrors if the following occurs:

- The mirrors are accidentally blocked while folding.
- The mirrors are accidentally manually folded/unfolded.
- The mirrors come out of the unfolded position.
- The mirrors shake and vibrate at normal driving speeds.

#### **To Reset The Power Folding Mirrors:**

1. Using the power folding mirror switch, move the mirror to its full forward position.
2. Using the power folding mirror switch, move the mirror to the full retract position (this may require multiple button pushes). This resets them to their normal position.

### **NOTE:**

- The power fold mirrors are designed to operate while the vehicle is stationary or traveling at moderate speeds. If you attempt to power fold the mirrors at high speeds they may not fully open or close. You should slow down to a moderate speed and complete the operation.
- When pushing the power fold button 10 or more times in one minute the system shuts down for one minute to protect the motors from over heating.

## **EXTERIOR LIGHTS**

### **Headlight Switch**

The headlight switch is located on the left side of the instrument panel, next to the steering wheel. The headlight switch controls the operation of the headlights, parking lights, instrument panel lights, cargo lights and fog lights (if equipped).





**Headlight Switch**

- 1 — Auto
- 2 — Rotate Headlight Switch
- 3 — Push Cargo Light
- 4 — Rotate Dimmer
- 5 — Push Fog Light

Your vehicle is equipped with plastic headlight and fog light (if equipped) lenses that are lighter and less susceptible to stone breakage than glass lights. Plastic is not as scratch

resistant as glass and therefore different lens cleaning procedures must be followed.

To minimize the possibility of scratching the lenses and reducing light output, avoid wiping with a dry cloth. To remove road dirt, wash with a mild soap solution followed by rinsing.

**NOTE:**

If your vehicle is equipped with illuminated approach lights under the outside mirrors, they can be turned off through the instrument cluster or the Uconnect radio. For further information, refer to the Owner's Manual.

**CAUTION!**

Do not use abrasive cleaning components, solvents, steel wool or other abrasive materials to clean the lenses.

## Headlights

To turn on the headlights, rotate the headlight switch clockwise to the headlight position. When the headlight switch is on, the parking lights, taillights, license plate light and instrument panel lights are also turned on. To turn off the headlights, rotate the headlight switch back to the O (off) position.

## Multifunction Lever

The multifunction lever is located on the left side of the steering column.



**Multifunction Lever**

## High/Low Beam Switch

Push the multifunction lever toward the instrument panel to switch the headlights to high beam. Pulling the multifunction lever back toward the steering wheel will turn the low beams back on, or shut the high beams off.

## Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control — If Equipped

The Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control system provides increased forward lighting at night by automating high beam control through the use of a digital camera mounted on the inside rearview mirror. This camera detects vehicle specific light and automatically switches from high beams to low beams until the approaching vehicle is out of view.

### NOTE:

- The Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control can be turned on or off by selecting “ON” under “Auto Dim High Beams” within your Uconnect settings, as well as

turning the headlight switch to the AUTO position. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner’s Manual for further information.

- Broken, muddy, or obstructed headlights and taillights of vehicles in the field of view will cause headlights to remain on longer (closer to the vehicle). Also, dirt, film, and other obstructions on the windshield or camera lens will cause the system to function improperly.

If the windshield or Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control mirror is replaced, the mirror must be re-aimed to ensure proper performance. See a local authorized dealer.

### To Activate

1. The Automatic High Beams are enabled through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner’s Manual for further information.
2. Turn the headlight switch to the AUTO headlight position.

3. Push the multifunction lever away from you (toward front of vehicle) to engage the high beam mode.

### NOTE:

This system will not activate until the vehicle is at or above 20 mph (32 km/h).

### To Deactivate

1. Pull the multifunction lever toward you (or rearward in vehicle) to manually deactivate the system (normal operation of low beams).
2. Push back on the multifunction lever to reactivate the system.

## Automatic Headlights — If Equipped

This system automatically turns the headlights on or off according to ambient light levels. To turn the system on, rotate the headlight switch counterclockwise to the AUTO position. When the system is on, the headlight time delay feature is also on. This means the headlights will stay on for up to 90 seconds after you place the ignition into the OFF position. The head-



light time delay can be programmed 0/30/60/90 seconds. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner’s Manual for further information.

To turn the automatic system off, move the headlight switch out of the AUTO position.

**NOTE:**

The engine must be running before the headlights will turn on in the Automatic Mode.

## Parking Lights And Panel Lights



To turn on the parking lights and instrument panel lights, rotate the headlight switch clockwise. To turn off the parking lights, rotate the headlight switch back to the O (off) position.

## Headlights On With Wipers (Available With Automatic Headlights Only)

When this feature is active, the headlights will turn on approximately 10 seconds after the wipers are turned on if the headlight switch is placed in the AUTO position. In addition, the headlights will turn off when the

wipers are turned off, if they were turned on by this feature.

**NOTE:**

This feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner’s Manual for further information.

## Turn Signals

Move the multifunction lever up or down and the arrows on each side of the instrument cluster display will flash to show proper operation of the front and rear turn signal lights.

**NOTE:**

If either light remains on and does not flash, or there is a very fast flash rate, check for a defective outside light bulb. If an indicator fails to light when the lever is moved, it would suggest that the indicator bulb is defective.

## Lane Change Assist — If Equipped

Tap the multifunction lever up or down once, without moving beyond the detent, and the

turn signal (right or left) will flash three times then automatically turn off.

## Cargo Light

The cargo light is turned on by pushing on the cargo light button.

The cargo light will also turn on for approximately 60 seconds when the unlock button on a key fob is pushed, as part of the Illuminated Entry feature.

## WINDSHIELD WIPERS AND WASHERS

### Windshield Wipers

The wipers and washers are operated by a switch in the multifunction lever. Turn the end of the lever to select the desired wiper speed.

Rotate the end of the lever upward, to the first detent past the intermittent settings for low-speed wiper operation. Rotate the end of the lever upward to the second detent past the intermittent settings for high-speed wiper operation.

## Intermittent Wiper System

The intermittent feature of this system was designed for use when weather conditions make a single wiping cycle, with a variable pause between cycles, desirable. For maximum delay between cycles, rotate the control knob upward to the first detent.

The delay interval decreases as you rotate the knob until it enters the low continual speed position. The delay can be regulated from a maximum of about 18 seconds between cycles, to a cycle every one second. The delay intervals will double in duration when the vehicle speed is 10 mph (16 km/h) or less.

## Windshield Washers

To use the windshield washer, push the washer knob, located on the end of the multifunction lever, inward to the second detent. Washer fluid will be sprayed and the wiper will operate for two to three cycles after the washer knob is released from this position.

If the washer knob is depressed while in the delay range, the wiper will operate for several seconds after the washer knob is released. It will then resume the intermittent interval

previously selected. If the washer knob is pushed while in the off position, the wiper will turn on and cycle approximately three times after the wash knob is released.

To prevent freeze-up of your windshield washer system in cold weather, select a solution or mixture that meets or exceeds the temperature range of your climate. This rating information can be found on most washer fluid containers.

### WARNING!

Sudden loss of visibility through the windshield could lead to a collision. You might not see other vehicles or other obstacles. To avoid sudden icing of the windshield during freezing weather, warm the windshield with the defroster before and during windshield washer use.

## Mist Feature

When a single wipe to clear off road mist or spray from a passing vehicle is needed, push the washer knob, located on the end of the

multifunction lever, inward to the first detent and release. The wipers will cycle one time and automatically shut off.

### NOTE:

The mist feature does not activate the washer pump; therefore, no washer fluid will be sprayed on the windshield. The wash function must be used in order to spray the windshield with washer fluid.

## Rain Sensing Wipers — If Equipped

This feature senses moisture on the windshield and automatically activates the wipers for the driver. The feature is especially useful for road splash or overspray from the windshield washers of the vehicle ahead. Rotate the end of the multifunction lever to one of five settings to activate this feature.

### NOTE:

This feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner’s Manual for further information.



The sensitivity of the system can be adjusted with the multifunction lever. Wiper delay position 1 is the least sensitive, and wiper delay position 5 is the most sensitive. Position 3 should be used for normal rain conditions. Positions 1 and 2 can be used if the driver desires less wiper sensitivity. Positions 4 and 5 can be used if the driver desires more sensitivity. Place the wiper switch in the O (off) position when not using the system.

**NOTE:**

- The Rain Sensing feature will not operate when the wiper switch is in the low or high-speed position.
- The Rain Sensing feature may not function properly when ice, or dried salt water is present on the windshield.

- Use of Rain-X or products containing wax or silicone may reduce Rain Sensing performance.

The Rain Sensing system has protection features for the wiper blades and arms, and will not operate under the following conditions:

- **Low Ambient Temperature** — When the ignition is first turned ON, the Rain Sensing system will not operate until the wiper switch is moved, vehicle speed is greater than 0 mph (0 km/h), or the outside temperature is greater than 32°F (0°C).
- **Transmission In NEUTRAL Position** — When the ignition is ON, and the transmission is in the NEUTRAL position, the Rain Sensing

system will not operate until the wiper switch is moved, vehicle speed is greater than 5 mph (8 km/h), or the gear selector is moved out of the NEUTRAL position.

- **Remote Start Mode Inhibit** — On vehicles equipped with Remote Starting system, Rain Sensing wipers are not operational when the vehicle is in the remote start mode. Once the operator is in the vehicle and has placed the ignition switch in the RUN position, Rain Sensing wiper operation can resume, if it has been selected, and no other inhibit conditions (mentioned previously) exist.

## CLIMATE CONTROLS

### Automatic Climate Controls With A Touchscreen



Uconnect 4C/4C NAV Automatic Climate Controls





Automatic Climate Control Knobs

## Control Descriptions

### NOTE:

Icons and descriptions can vary based upon vehicle equipment.

| Icon                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>MAX A/C</b>                                                                    | <b>MAX A/C Button</b><br>Press and release to change the current setting, the indicator illuminates when MAX A/C is on. Performing this function again will cause the MAX A/C operation to switch into manual mode and the MAX A/C indicator will turn off.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>A/C</b>                                                                        | <b>A/C Button</b><br>Press and release the button on the touchscreen, or push and release the button on the faceplate, to change the current setting, the indicator illuminates when A/C is on.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|  | <b>Recirculation Button</b><br>Press and release this button to change the system between recirculation mode and outside air mode. Recirculation can be used when outside conditions such as smoke, odors, dust, or high humidity are present. <p><b>NOTE:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Continuous use of the Recirculation mode may make the inside air stuffy and window fogging may occur. Extended use of this mode is not recommended.</li> <li>The use of the Recirculation mode in cold or damp weather could cause windows to fog on the inside, because of moisture buildup inside the vehicle. Select the outside air position for maximum defogging.</li> <li>Recirculation can be used in all modes except for Defrost.</li> <li>The A/C can be deselected manually without disturbing the mode control selection.</li> </ul> |
| <b>AUTO</b>                                                                       | <b>AUTO Button — If Equipped</b><br>Automatically controls the interior cabin temperature by adjusting airflow distribution and amount. Toggling this function will cause the system to switch between manual mode and automatic modes. Refer to “Automatic Operation” within this section for more information.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |



| Icon                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <br><b>FRONT</b>                                                                                                                                                 | <p><b>Front Defrost Button</b></p> <p>Press and release the touchscreen button, or push and release the button on the faceplate, to change the current airflow setting to Defrost mode. The indicator illuminates when this feature is on. Air comes from the windshield and side window demist outlets. When the defrost button is selected, the blower level may increase. Use Defrost mode with maximum temperature settings for best windshield and side window defrosting and defogging. When toggling the front defrost mode button, the climate system will return to previous setting.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <br><b>REAR</b>                                                                                                                                                  | <p><b>Rear Defrost Button</b></p> <p>Push and release the button on the touchscreen, or push and release the button on the faceplate, to turn on the rear window defroster and the heated outside mirrors (if equipped). An indicator will illuminate when the rear window defroster is on. The rear window defroster automatically turns off after ten minutes.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <p><b>Uconnect 3</b><br/> <b>Temp</b><br/> <br/> <b>Uconnect 4C/4C NAV</b></p>  | <p><b>Driver and Passenger Temperature Up and Down Buttons</b></p> <p>Provides the driver and passenger with independent temperature control. Push the up arrow button on the faceplate, press the up arrow button on the touchscreen, or press and slide the temperature bar towards the red arrow button on the touchscreen for warmer temperature settings. Push the down arrow button on the faceplate, press the down arrow button on the touchscreen, or press and slide the temperature bar towards the blue arrow button on the touchscreen for cooler temperature settings. When the SYNC feature is active, the passenger's temperature will move up and down with the driver's temperature, when it is increased and decreased, respectively.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b><br/> Temperature numbers will only be displayed if the system is equipped with Automatic Temperature Control.</p> |

| Icon                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>SYNC</b></p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | <p><b>SYNC Button — If Equipped</b></p> <p>Press the SYNC button on the touchscreen to toggle the SYNC feature on/off. The SYNC indicator is illuminated when this feature is enabled. SYNC is used to synchronize the passenger temperature setting with the driver temperature setting. The SYNC feature also synchronizes the rear passengers' temperature to the driver temperature setting. Changing the passenger temperature setting while in SYNC will automatically exit this feature.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <p><b>Faceplate Knob</b></p>  <p><b>Touchscreen Buttons</b></p>  | <p><b>Blower Control</b></p> <p>Blower Control is used to regulate the amount of air forced through the climate system. There are seven blower speeds available. The speeds can be selected using either the blower control knob on the faceplate or the buttons on the touchscreen.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Faceplate:</b> The blower speed increases as you turn the blower control knob clockwise from the lowest blower setting. The blower speed decreases as you turn the blower control knob counterclockwise.</li> <li>• <b>Touchscreen:</b> Use the small blower icon to reduce the blower setting and the large blower icon to increase the blower setting. Blower can also be selected by pressing the blower bar area between the icons. For Uconnect 3, press the button to access the blower screen and control the blower.</li> </ul> |
| <p><b>Panel Mode</b></p>                                                                                                                          | <p><b>Panel Mode</b></p> <p>Air comes from the outlets in the instrument panel. Each of these outlets can be individually adjusted to direct the flow of air. The air vanes of the center outlets and outboard outlets can be moved up and down or side to side to regulate airflow direction. There is a shut off wheel located below the air vanes to shut off or adjust the amount of airflow from these outlets.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <p><b>Bi-Level Mode</b></p>                                                                                                                       | <p><b>Bi-Level Mode</b></p> <p>Air comes from the instrument panel outlets and floor outlets. A slight amount of air is directed through the defrost and side window demister outlets.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b></p> <p>Bi-Level mode is designed under comfort conditions to provide cooler air out of the panel outlets and warmer air from the floor outlets.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |



| Icon                                                                                                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Floor Mode</b><br> | <b>Floor Mode</b><br>Air comes from the floor outlets. A slight amount of air is directed through the defrost and side window demister outlets.                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Mix Mode</b><br>   | <b>Mix Mode</b><br>Air is directed through the floor, defrost, and side window demister outlets. This setting works best in cold or snowy conditions that require extra heat to the windshield. This setting is good for maintaining comfort while reducing moisture on the windshield. |
| <b>OFF</b>                                                                                             | <b>Climate Control OFF Button</b><br>Press and release this button on the touchscreen, or push the faceplate button, to turn the Climate Control System off.                                                                                                                            |

## Climate Control Functions

### A/C (Air Conditioning)

The Air Conditioning (A/C) button allows the operator to manually activate or deactivate the air conditioning system. When the air conditioning system is turned on, cool dehumidified air will flow through the outlets into the cabin. For improved fuel economy, press the A/C button to turn off the air conditioning and manually adjust the blower and airflow mode settings. Also, make sure to select only Panel, Bi-Level, or Floor modes.

#### NOTE:

- If fog or mist appears on the windshield or side glass, select Defrost mode, and increase blower speed if needed.
- If your air conditioning performance seems lower than expected, check the front of the A/C condenser (located in front of the radiator), for an accumulation of dirt or insects. Clean with a gentle water spray from the front of the radiator and through the condenser.

#### MAX A/C

MAX A/C sets the control for maximum cooling performance.

Press and release to toggle between MAX A/C and the prior settings. The button illuminates when MAX A/C is on.

In MAX A/C, the blower level and mode position can be adjusted to desired user settings. Pressing other settings will cause the MAX A/C operation to switch to the selected setting and MAX A/C to exit.

## Recirculation

In cold weather, use of Recirculation mode may lead to excessive window fogging. The Recirculation feature may be unavailable (button on the touchscreen greyed out) if conditions exist that could create fogging on the inside of the windshield.

On systems with Manual Climate Controls, the Recirculation mode is not allowed in Defrost mode to improve window clearing operation. Recirculation is disabled automatically if this mode is selected. Attempting to use Recirculation while in this mode causes the LED in the control button to blink and then turns off.

## Automatic Temperature Control (ATC) — If Equipped

### Automatic Operation

1. Push the AUTO button on the faceplate, or the AUTO button on the touchscreen on the Automatic Temperature Control (ATC) Panel.

2. Next, adjust the temperature you would like the system to maintain by adjusting the driver and passenger temperature control buttons. Once the desired temperature is displayed, the system will achieve and automatically maintain that comfort level.
3. When the system is set up for your comfort level, it is not necessary to change the settings. You will experience the greatest efficiency by simply allowing the system to function automatically.

### NOTE:

- It is not necessary to move the temperature settings for cold or hot vehicles. The system automatically adjusts the temperature, mode, and blower speed to provide comfort as quickly as possible.
- The temperature can be displayed in U.S. or Metric units by selecting the US/Metric customer-programmable feature. Refer to the “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in your Owner’s Manual for further information.

To provide you with maximum comfort in the Automatic mode during cold start-ups, the blower fan will remain on low until the engine warms up. The blower will increase in speed and transition into Auto mode.

### Manual Operation Override

This system offers a full complement of manual override features. The AUTO symbol in the front ATC display will be turned off when the system is being used in the manual mode.

## Operating Tips

### Summer Operation

The engine cooling system must be protected with a high-quality antifreeze coolant to provide proper corrosion protection and to protect against engine overheating. OAT coolant (conforming to MS.90032) is recommended.

### Winter Operation

To ensure the best possible heater and defroster performance, make sure the engine cooling system is functioning properly and the proper amount, type, and concentration



of coolant is used. Use of the Air Recirculation mode during Winter months is not recommended, because it may cause window fogging.

### Vacation/Storage

Before you store your vehicle, or keep it out of service (i.e., vacation) for two weeks or more, run the air conditioning system at idle for about five minutes, in fresh air with the blower setting on high. This will ensure adequate system lubrication to minimize the possibility of compressor damage when the system is started again.

### Window Fogging

Vehicle windows tend to fog on the inside in mild, rainy, and/or humid weather. To clear the windows, select Defrost or Mix mode and increase the front blower speed. Do not use the Recirculation mode without A/C for long periods, as fogging may occur.

### CAUTION!

Failure to follow these cautions can cause damage to the heating elements:

### CAUTION!

- Use care when washing the inside of the rear window. Do not use abrasive window cleaners on the interior surface of the window. Use a soft cloth and a mild washing solution, wiping parallel to the heating elements. Labels can be peeled off after soaking with warm water.
- Do not use scrapers, sharp instruments, or abrasive window cleaners on the interior surface of the window.
- Keep all objects a safe distance from the window.

### Outside Air Intake

Make sure the air intake, located directly in front of the windshield, is free of obstructions, such as leaves. Leaves collected in the air intake may reduce airflow, and if they enter the plenum, they could plug the water drains. In Winter months, make sure the air intake is clear of ice, slush, and snow.

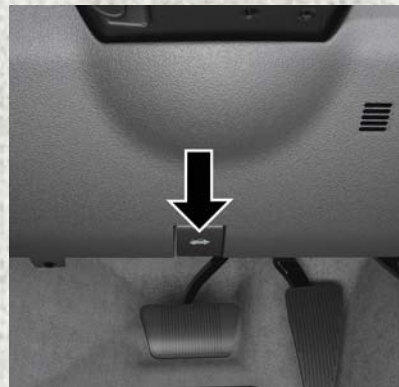
### Cabin Air Filter

The climate control system filters out dust and pollen from the air. Contact an authorized dealer to service your cabin air filter, and to have it replaced when needed.

## HOOD

### To Open The Hood

To open the hood, two latches must be released.



**Hood Release**

1. Pull the hood release lever located below the steering wheel at the base of the instrument panel.
2. Reach into the opening beneath the center of the hood and push the safety latch lever to the left to release it, before raising the hood.

## To Close The Hood

Lower the hood to approximately 12 inches (30 cm) from the engine compartment and drop it. Make sure that the hood is completely closed.

### WARNING!

Be sure the hood is fully latched before driving your vehicle. If the hood is not fully latched, it could open when the vehicle is in motion and block your vision. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious injury or death.

### CAUTION!

To prevent possible damage, do not slam the hood to close it. Use a firm downward push at the front center of the hood to ensure that both latches engage.

## UNIVERSAL GARAGE DOOR OPENER (HOMELINK)



HomeLink Buttons

- HomeLink replaces up to three hand-held transmitters that operate devices such as garage door openers, motorized gates, lighting or home security systems. The HomeLink unit is powered by your vehicle's 12 Volt battery.
- The HomeLink buttons that are located in the overhead console or sunvisor designate the three different HomeLink channels.
- To operate HomeLink, push and release any of the programmed HomeLink buttons. These buttons will activate the devices they are programmed to with each press of the corresponding HomeLink button.

## Before You Begin Programming HomeLink

For efficient programming and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal, it is recommended that a new battery be placed in the hand-held transmitter of the device that is being programmed to the HomeLink system. Make sure your hand-held transmitter is programmed to activate the device you are trying to program your HomeLink button to.



Ensure that your vehicle is parked outside of the garage before you begin programming.

It is recommended that you erase all the channels of your HomeLink before you use it for the first time.

If you have any problems, or require assistance, please call toll-free 1-800-355-3515 or, on the Internet at HomeLink.com for information or assistance.

## Erasing All The HomeLink Channels

To erase the channels, follow this procedure:

1. Place the ignition switch into the ON/RUN position.

### NOTE:

For vehicle's equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go, place the ignition in the RUN position with the Engine ON. Make sure to program HomeLink with the vehicle outside of the garage, or with the garage door open at all times.

2. Push and hold the two outside HomeLink buttons (I and III) for up to 20 seconds, or until the instrument cluster display switches from the "Clearing Channels" message to the "Channels Cleared" message.

### NOTE:

Erasing all channels should only be performed when programming HomeLink for the first time. Do not erase channels when programming additional buttons.

## Identifying Whether You Have A Rolling Code Or Non-Rolling Code Device

Before programming a device to one of your HomeLink buttons, you must determine whether the device has a rolling code or non-rolling code.

### Rolling Code Devices

To determine if your device has a rolling code, a good indicator is its manufacturing date. Typically, devices manufactured after 1995 have rolling codes. A device with a rolling code will also have a "LEARN" or

"TRAIN" button located where the antenna is attached to the device. The button may not be immediately visible when looking at the device. The name and color of the button may vary slightly by manufacturer.

### NOTE:

The "LEARN" or "TRAIN" button is not the button you normally use to operate the device.

### Non-rolling Code Devices

Most devices manufactured before 1995 will not have a rolling code. These devices will also not have a "LEARN" or "TRAIN" button.

## Programming HomeLink To A Garage Door Opener

To program any of the HomeLink buttons to activate your garage door opener motor, follow the steps below:

### NOTE:

All HomeLink buttons are programmed using this procedure. You do not need to erase all channels when programming additional buttons.

1. Place the ignition switch into the ON/RUN position.

**NOTE:**

For vehicle's equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go, place the ignition in the RUN position with the Engine ON. Make sure to program HomeLink with the vehicle outside of the garage, or with the garage door open at all times.

2. Place the garage door opener transmitter 1 to 3 inches (3 to 8 cm) away from the HomeLink button you wish to program, while keeping the HomeLink indicator light in view.
3. Push and hold the HomeLink button you want to program while you push and hold the garage door opener transmitter button you are trying to replicate.
4. Continue to hold both buttons until the Instrument Cluster Display changes from "CHANNEL # TRAINING" to "CHANNEL # TRAINED." Once this happens, release both buttons.

**NOTE:**

- It may take up to 30 seconds or longer in some cases for the channel to train.
- If "DID NOT TRAIN" appears in the instrument cluster display repeat from Step 2.

**NOTE:**

Make sure the garage door opener motor is plugged in before moving on to the rolling code/non-rolling code final steps.

**Rolling Code Garage Door Opener Final Steps**

**NOTE:**

You have 30 seconds in which to initiate rolling code final step 2, after completing rolling code final step 1.

1. At the garage door opener motor (in the garage), locate the "LEARN" or "TRAIN" button. This can usually be found where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the garage door opener motor. Firmly push and release the "LEARN" or "TRAIN" button.

2. Return to the vehicle and push the programmed HomeLink button three times (holding the button for two seconds each time). The instrument cluster display will show "CHANNEL # TRANSMIT". If the garage door opener motor operates, programming is complete.

3. Push the programmed HomeLink button to confirm that the garage door opener motor operates. If the garage door opener motor does not operate, repeat the final steps for the rolling code procedure.

**Non-Rolling Code Garage Door Opener Final Steps**

1. Push and hold the programmed HomeLink button and observe the instrument cluster display. If the instrument cluster display shows the "CHANNEL # TRANSMIT," programming is complete.
2. Push the programmed HomeLink button to confirm that the garage door opener motor operates. If the garage door opener motor does not operate, repeat the steps from the beginning.



**WARNING!**

- Your motorized door or gate will open and close while you are programming the universal transceiver. Do not program the transceiver if people or pets are in the path of the door or gate.
- Do not run your vehicle in a closed garage or confined area while programming the transceiver. Exhaust gas from your vehicle contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which is odorless and colorless. Carbon Monoxide is poisonous when inhaled and can cause you and others to be severely injured or killed.

## Programming HomeLink To A Miscellaneous Device

Refer to “Programming HomeLink To A Garage Door Opener” for the procedure on how to program HomeLink to a miscellaneous device, as it follows the same procedure. Be sure to determine if the device has a rolling code, or non-rolling code before beginning the programming process.

**NOTE:**

Canadian radio frequency laws require transmitter signals to time-out (or quit) after several seconds of transmission, which may not be long enough for HomeLink to pick up the signal during programming. Similar to this Canadian law, some U.S. gate operators are designed to time-out in the same manner. The procedure may need to be preformed multiple times to successfully pair the device to your HomeLink buttons.

## Reprogramming A Single HomeLink Button

To reprogram a single HomeLink button that has been previously trained, without erasing all the channels, follow the procedure below. Be sure to determine whether the new device you want to program the HomeLink button to has a Rolling Code, or Non-rolling Code.

1. Cycle the ignition to the ON/RUN position.

**NOTE:**

For vehicle's equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go, place the ignition in the RUN position with the Engine ON. Make sure to program HomeLink with the vehicle outside of the garage, or with the garage door open at all times.

2. Push and hold the desired HomeLink button until the instrument cluster display shows the “CHANNEL # TRAINING” message. **Do not release the button.**
3. **Without releasing the button**, proceed with Step 2 in “Programming HomeLink To A Garage Door Opener” and follow all remaining steps.

## General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all Radio Frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### NOTE:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## INTERNAL EQUIPMENT

### Electrical Power Outlets

The auxiliary 12 Volt (13 Amp) power outlets can provide power for in-cab accessories designed for use with the standard "cigar lighter" plug. The 12 Volt power outlets and USB Port (Charge Only) have a cap attached to the outlet indicating "12V DC," together with either a key symbol, battery symbol, or USB symbol.

A key symbol indicates that the key must be in the ON/RUN or ACC positions for the outlet to provide power. The battery symbol indicates that the outlet is connected to the battery, and can provide power at all times.

### CAUTION!

- Do not exceed the maximum power of 160 Watts (13 Amps) at 12 Volts. If the 160 Watts (13 Amps) power rating is exceeded, the fuse protecting the system will need to be replaced.
- Power outlets are designed for accessory plugs only. Do not insert any other object

### CAUTION!

in the power outlets as this will damage the outlet and blow the fuse. Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

The auxiliary power outlets can be found in the following locations:

- Lower left and lower right in the center of the instrument panel – if equipped with a column or a eight-speed electronic gear selector.
- Inside the top storage tray.



Power Outlet — Center Console



- Rear of the center console storage compartment.



**Power Outlet — Rear Console**

When the vehicle is turned off, be sure to unplug any equipment as to not drain the battery of the vehicle. All accessories connected to the outlet(s) should be removed or turned off when the vehicle is not in use to protect the battery against discharge.

### **WARNING!**

To avoid serious injury or death:

- Only devices designed for use in this type of outlet should be inserted into any 12 Volt outlet.
- Do not touch with wet hands.
- Close the lid when not in use and while driving the vehicle.
- If this outlet is mishandled, it may cause an electric shock and failure.

### **CAUTION!**

- Many accessories that can be plugged in draw power from the vehicle's battery, even when not in use (i.e., cellular phones, etc.). Eventually, if plugged in long enough, the vehicle's battery will discharge sufficiently to degrade battery life and/or prevent the engine from starting.
- Accessories that draw higher power (i.e., coolers, vacuum cleaners, lights, etc.), will discharge the battery even more

### **CAUTION!**

quickly. Only use these intermittently and with greater caution.

- After the use of high power draw accessories, or long periods of the vehicle not being started (with accessories still plugged in), the vehicle must be driven a sufficient length of time to allow the generator to recharge the vehicle's battery.

### **Power Inverter — If Equipped**

A 115 or 230 Volt (150 Watts Maximum) outlet is located on the center stack of the instrument panel, to the right of the radio. This outlet can power cellular phones, electronics and other low power devices requiring power up to 150 Watts. Certain high-end video game consoles will exceed this power limit, as will most power tools.

The power inverter is designed with built-in overload protection. If the power rating of 150 Watts is exceeded, the power inverter

will automatically shut down. Once the electrical device has been removed from the outlet the inverter should automatically reset.



**Power Inverter**

To turn on the power outlet, simply plug in the device. The outlet automatically turns off when the device is unplugged.

**NOTE:**

- The Power Inverter will only turn on if the ignition is in the ACC or ON/RUN position.
- Due to built-in overload protection, the power inverter will shut down if the power rating is exceeded.

**WARNING!**

To avoid serious injury or death:

- Do not insert any objects into the receptacles.
- Do not touch with wet hands.
- Close the lid when not in use.
- If this outlet is mishandled, it may cause an electric shock and failure.

## Auxiliary Switches — If Equipped

There can be up to five auxiliary switches located in the lower switch bank of the instrument panel which can be used to power various electronic devices and PTO (Power

Take Off) – If Equipped. If Power Take Off is equipped, it will take the place of the fifth Auxiliary switch. Connections to the switches are found under the hood in the connectors attached to the auxiliary Power Distribution Center.

You have the ability to configure the functionality of the auxiliary switches via the instrument cluster display. All switches can now be configured for setting the switch type operation to latching or momentary, power source of either battery or ignition, and ability to hold last state across key cycles.

**NOTE:**

Holding last state conditions are met when switch type is set to latching and power source is set to ignition.

For further information on using the auxiliary switches, please refer to the Ram Body Builders Guide by accessing [www.rambodybuilder.com](http://www.rambodybuilder.com) and choosing the appropriate links.





# GETTING TO KNOW YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL

## **INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY . . . . .52**

Instrument Cluster Display Controls . . . . .52

Diesel Messages And Warnings —

6.7L Cummins Diesel Engine . . . . .53

Oil Life Reset . . . . .57

Instrument Cluster Display Programmable  
Features . . . . .58

## **WARNING LIGHTS AND MESSAGES . . . . .59**

Red Warning Lights . . . . .59

Yellow Warning Lights . . . . .62

Yellow Indicator Lights . . . . .65

Green Indicator Lights . . . . .65

White Indicator Lights . . . . .66

Blue Indicator Lights . . . . .66

## **ONBOARD DIAGNOSTIC SYSTEM —**

**OBD II . . . . .66**

Onboard Diagnostic System (OBD II)

Cybersecurity . . . . .67



## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY

Your vehicle will be equipped with an instrument cluster display, which offers useful information to the driver. With the ignition in the STOP/OFF mode, opening/closing of a door will activate the display for viewing, and display the total miles, or kilometers, in the odometer. Your instrument cluster display is designed to display important information about your vehicle's systems and features. Using a driver interactive display located on the instrument panel, your instrument cluster display can show you how systems are working and give you warnings when they are not. The steering wheel mounted controls allow you to scroll through the main menus and submenus. You can access the specific information you want and make selections and adjustments.

### Instrument Cluster Display Controls

The instrument cluster display features a driver-interactive display that is located in the instrument cluster.

The instrument cluster display menu items may consist of the following:

- Speedometer
- Vehicle Info
- Fuel Economy Info
- Trip A
- Trip B
- Audio
- Trailer Tow
- Stored Messages
- Screen Setup
- Vehicle Settings (Not equipped with a Uconnect touchscreen radio)

The system allows the driver to select information by pushing the following instrument cluster display control buttons located on the left side of the steering wheel:



**Instrument Cluster Display Controls**

- Push and release the **up** arrow button to scroll upward through the main menu items, submenu screen, and vehicle settings.
- Push and release the **down** arrow button to scroll downward through the main menu items, submenu screen, and vehicle settings.

- Push and release the **right** arrow button to access/select the information screens or submenu screens of a main menu item. Push and hold the **right** arrow button for two seconds to reset displayed/selected features that can be reset.
- Push and release the **left** arrow button to access/select the information screens, submenu screens of a main menu item, or to return to the main menu.

## Diesel Messages And Warnings — 6.7L Cummins Diesel Engine

### Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) Messages

The Cummins diesel engine meets all diesel emissions standards, resulting in one of the lowest emitting diesel engines ever produced. To achieve these emissions standards, your vehicle is equipped with a state-of-the-art engine and exhaust system. These systems are seamlessly integrated into your vehicle and managed by the Powertrain Control Module (PCM). The PCM manages engine combustion to allow the exhaust system's catalyst to trap and burn Particulate Matter

(PM) pollutants, with no input or interaction on your part.

### WARNING!

A hot exhaust system can start a fire if you park over materials that can burn. Such materials might be grass or leaves coming into contact with your exhaust system. Do not park or operate your vehicle in areas where your exhaust system can contact anything that can burn.

Your vehicle has the ability to alert you to additional maintenance required on your vehicle or engine. The following messages may display in your instrument cluster display:

- **Perform Service** — Your vehicle will require emissions maintenance at a set interval. To help remind you when this maintenance is due, the instrument cluster display will display "Perform Service". When the "Perform Service" message is displayed in the instrument cluster display it is necessary to have the emissions maintenance performed. Emissions maintenance may include replacing the Closed Crankcase Ventilation (CCV) filter element. The procedure

for clearing and resetting the "Perform Service" indicator message is located in the appropriate Service Information.

- **Exhaust System — Regeneration Required Now** — "Exhaust Filter XX% Full Safely Drive at Highway Speeds to Remedy" will be displayed in the instrument cluster display if the exhaust particulate filter reaches 80% of its maximum storage capacity. Under conditions of exclusive short duration and low speed driving cycles, your Cummins diesel engine and exhaust after-treatment system may never reach the conditions required to remove the trapped PM. If this occurs, the "Exhaust Filter XX% Full Safely Drive at Highway Speeds to Remedy" message will be displayed in the instrument cluster display. If this message is displayed, you will hear one chime to assist in alerting you of this condition

By simply driving your vehicle at highway speeds for as little as 45 minutes, you can remedy the condition in the particulate filter system and allow your Cummins diesel engine and exhaust after-treatment system to remove the trapped PM and restore the system to normal operating condition.



- **Exhaust System — Regeneration In Process Exhaust Filter XX% Full** — Indicates that the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) is self-cleaning. Maintain your current driving condition until regeneration is completed.
- **Exhaust System — Regeneration Completed** — This message indicates that the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) self-cleaning is completed. If this message is displayed, you will hear one chime to assist in alerting you of this condition.
- **Exhaust Service Required — See Dealer Now** — This message indicates regeneration has been disabled due to a system malfunction. At this point the engine Powertrain Control Module (PCM) will register a fault code, the instrument panel will display a MIL light.

### CAUTION!

See your authorized dealer, as damage to the exhaust system could occur soon with continued operation.

- **Exhaust Filter Full — Power Reduced See Dealer** — This message indicates the PCM has derated the engine to limit the likelihood of permanent damage to the after-treatment system. If this condition is not corrected and a dealer service is not performed, extensive exhaust after-treatment damage can occur. To correct this condition it will be necessary to have your vehicle serviced by your local authorized dealer.

### NOTE:

Failing to follow the oil change indicator, changing your oil and resetting the oil change indicator by 0 miles remaining will prevent the diesel exhaust filter from performing its cleaning routine. This will shortly result in a Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) and reduced engine power. Only an authorized dealer will be able to correct this condition.

### CAUTION!

See your authorized dealer, as damage to the exhaust system could occur soon with continued operation.

### Cold Ambient Derate Mode Messages

The vehicle will display messages when a derate (engine power reduction) is activated to protect the turbocharger during engine start up in cold ambient temperatures.

- **Engine Power Reduced During Warmup** — This message will display during start up when the ambient temperature is between 10° F (-12° C) and -10° F (-23° C).
- **Engine Power Reduced Up To 30 Sec (Seconds) During Warmup** — This message will display during start up when the ambient temperature is between -10° F (-23° C) and -25° F (-32° C).
- **Engine Power Reduced Up To 2 Min (Minutes) During Warmup** — This message will display during start up when the ambient temperature is -25° F (-32° C) and below.
- **Coolant Low** — This telltale will turn on to indicate the vehicle coolant level is low. Refer to “Dealer Service” in “Servicing And Maintenance” in the Owner’s Manual for further information.

## Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Warning Messages

There are four different messages which are displayed if the vehicle detects that the DEF system has been filled with a fluid other than DEF, has experienced component failures, or when tampering has been detected. The vehicle may be limited to a maximum speed of 5 MPH (8 km/H) if the DEF system is not serviced within less than 200 miles (322 km) of the fault being detected.

When the DEF system needs to be serviced the following warnings will display:

- **DEF Low Refill Soon** — This message will display when the low level is reached, during vehicle start up, and with increased frequency during vehicle operation. It will be accompanied by a single chime. Approximately 5 gallons (19 Liters) of DEF is required to refill the tank when this message is initially displayed. on pickup applications, and approximately 7 gallons (26 Liters) are required on chassis-cab applications.

- **Speed Limited to 5 MPH in XXX mi Refill DEF**

— This message will continuously display if the “DEF Low Refill Soon” message is ignored, and the frequency of occurrence of the chime will increase unless up to 2 gallons (7.5 Liters) of DEF is added to the tank.

- **5 MPH Max Speed on Restart, Long Idle or Refuel Refill DEF**

— This message will continuously display when the counter reaches zero, and will be accompanied by a periodic chime.

The vehicle will only be capable of a maximum speed of 5 MPH upon the first of the following conditions to occur:

- If the vehicle is shutoff and restarted.
- If the vehicle is idled for an extended period of time, approximately one hour or greater.
- If the system detects that the level of fuel in the tank has increased.

Add a minimum of 2 gallons (7.5 Liters) of DEF to the tank in order to avoid vehicle operation at a maximum speed of 5 MPH (8 km/H).

## NOTE:

A minimum of 2 gallons (7.5 Liters) may be required to restore normal vehicle operation. Although the vehicle will start normally and can be placed in gear after this message has been initially displayed, extreme caution should be utilized since the vehicle will only be capable of maneuvering at a maximum speed of 5 MPH (8 km/H).

## Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Fault Warning Messages

There are five different messages which are displayed if the vehicle detects that the DEF system has been filled with a fluid other than DEF, has experienced component failures, or when tampering has been detected. The vehicle may be limited to a maximum speed of 5 MPH (8 km/H) if the DEF system is not serviced within less than 200 miles (322 km) of the fault being detected.



When the DEF system needs to be serviced the following warnings will display:

- **Service DEF System See Dealer** — This message will display when the fault is initially detected, each time the vehicle is started, and periodically during driving. The message will be accompanied by a single chime. We recommend you drive to your nearest authorized dealer and have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.
- **5 MPH Max Speed in 150 mi Service DEF System See Dealer** — This message will display if the DEF system has not been serviced after the “Service DEF System – See Dealer” message is displayed. This message will continuously display until the mileage counter reaches zero, and will be accompanied by a periodic chime. The message will continue to countdown until it reaches zero unless the vehicle is serviced. We recommend you drive to your nearest authorized dealer and have your vehicle serviced immediately.

#### NOTE:

Under some circumstances this mileage counter may start with a value of less than 150 miles (241 km). For example, if recurring faults are detected in a time interval of less than 40 hours, the counter may restart at the value where it stopped when a previous fault was temporarily remedied, or at a minimum of 50 miles (80 km).

- **5 MPH Max Speed on Restart, Long Idle or Refuel Service DEF See Dealer** — This message will continuously display when the mileage counter reaches zero, and will be accompanied by a periodic chime.

The vehicle will only be capable of a maximum speed of 5 MPH upon the first of the following conditions to occur:

- If the vehicle is shutoff and restarted.
- If the vehicle is idled for an extended period of time, approximately one hour or greater.
- If the system detects that the level of fuel in the tank has increased.

- **5 MPH Max Speed Service DEF System See Dealer** — This message will continuously display, and will be accompanied by a periodic chime. Although the vehicle can be started and placed in gear, the vehicle will only operate at a maximum speed of 5 MPH. Your vehicle will require towing, see your authorized dealer for service.

#### NOTE:

When this message is displayed, the engine can still be started. However, the vehicle will only operate at a maximum speed of 5 MPH.

- **Incorrect DEF Detected See Dealer** — This message will display when the fault is initially detected, each time the vehicle is started, and periodically during driving. The message will be accompanied by a single chime. We recommend you drive to your nearest authorized dealer and have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

## RAM Active Air System

Your vehicle is equipped with an advanced Ram Active Air system that provides enhanced performance, especially when towing under demanding hot or high altitude conditions. If the instrument cluster display displays the message “Active Airbox Service Required See Dealer”, vehicle performance may be reduced until service is performed by an authorized RAM dealer.

## Oil Life Reset

Your vehicle is equipped with an engine oil change indicator system. The “Oil Change Required” message will display in the instrument cluster display after a single chime has sounded, to indicate the next scheduled oil change interval. The engine oil change indicator system is duty cycle based, which means the engine oil change interval may fluctuate, dependent upon your personal driving style.

### NOTE:

Use the steering wheel instrument cluster display controls for the following procedure(s).

## Vehicles Equipped With Passive Entry

1. Without pushing the brake pedal, push the ENGINE START/STOP button and place the ignition to the ON/RUN position (do not start the engine).
2. Push and release the **down** arrow button to scroll downward through the main menu to “Vehicle Info.”
3. Push and release the **right** arrow button to access the “Vehicle Info” screen, then scroll up or down to select “Oil Life.”
4. Push and hold the **right** arrow button to select “Reset”.
5. Push and release the **down** arrow button to select “Yes,” then push and release the **right** arrow button to select reset of the Oil Life to 100%.
6. Push and release the **up** arrow button to exit the instrument cluster display screen.

## Vehicles Not Equipped With Passive Entry

1. Without pushing the brake pedal, cycle the ignition to the ON/RUN position (do not start the engine).
2. Push and release the **down** arrow button to scroll downward through the main menu to “Vehicle Info.”
3. Push and release the **right** arrow button to access the “Vehicle Info” screen then scroll up or down to select “Oil Life.”
4. Push and hold the **right** arrow button to select “YES” by pushing the **right** arrow then push and release the **right** arrow button to select reset of the Oil Life to 100%.
5. Push and release the **up** arrow button to exit the instrument cluster display screen.

### NOTE:

If the indicator message illuminates when you start the vehicle, the Oil Life indicator system did not reset. If necessary, repeat this procedure.



## Instrument Cluster Display Programmable Features

The instrument cluster display can be used to view or change the following settings. Push the **up** or **down** arrow button until System Setup displays, then push the **right** arrow button. Scroll through the settings using the **up** or **down** arrow button. Push the **right** arrow button to change the setting. Push the **left** arrow button to scroll back to a previous menu or sub menu.

- Language Select
- Units
- ParkSense
- Tilt Mirror In Reverse
- Rain Sensing Wipers
- Hill Start Assist
- Headlights Off Delay
- Illuminated Approach
- Headlights On With Wipers
- Automatic Highbeams
- Flash Lights With Lock
- Auto Lock Doors
- Auto Unlock Doors
- Sound Horn With Remote Start
- Sound Horn With Remote Lock
- Remote Unlock Sequence
- Key Fob Linked To Memory
- Passive Entry
- Remote Start Comfort System
- Easy Exit Seat
- Key Off Power Delay
- Commercial Settings
- Air Suspension Display Alerts
- Aero Ride Height Mode
- Tire/Jack Mode
- Transport Mode
- Wheel Alignment Mode
- Horn With Remote Lower
- Lights With Remote Lower
- Trailer Select
- Brake Type
- Trailer Name
- Compass Variance
- Calibrate Compass
- Fuel Saver Display
- Park Assist Front Chime Volume
- Park Assist Rear Chime Volume

## WARNING LIGHTS AND MESSAGES

The warning/indicator lights will illuminate in the instrument panel together with a dedicated message and/or acoustic signal when applicable. These indications are indicative and precautionary and as such must not be considered as exhaustive and/or alternative to the information contained in the Owner's Manual, which you are advised to read carefully in all cases. Always refer to the information in this chapter in the event of a failure indication. All active telltales will display first if applicable. The system check menu may appear different based upon equipment options and current vehicle status. Some telltales are optional and may not appear.

### Red Warning Lights

#### — Seat Belt Reminder Warning Light

This light indicates when the driver or passenger seat belt is unbuckled. When the ignition is first placed in the ON/RUN or ACC/ON/RUN position and if the driver's seat belt is unbuckled, a chime will sound and the light will turn on. When driving, if the driver

or front passenger seat belt remains unbuckled, the Seat Belt Reminder Light will flash or remain on continuously and a chime will sound.

Refer to "Occupant Restraint Systems" in "Safety" for further information.

#### — Air Bag Warning Light

This light indicates a fault with the air bag, and will turn on for four to eight seconds as a bulb check when the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN or ACC/ON/RUN position. This light will illuminate with a single chime when a fault with the air bag has been detected, it will stay on until the fault is cleared. If the light is either not on during startup, stays on, or turns on while driving, have the system inspected at an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

#### **BRAKE** — Brake Warning Light

This light monitors various brake functions, including brake fluid level and parking brake application. If the brake light turns on it may indicate that the parking brake is applied, that the brake fluid level is low, or that there

is a problem with the anti-lock brake system reservoir.

If the light remains on when the parking brake has been disengaged, and the fluid level is at the full mark on the master cylinder reservoir, it indicates a possible brake hydraulic system malfunction or that a problem with the Brake Booster has been detected by the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) / Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system. In this case, the light will remain on until the condition has been corrected. If the problem is related to the brake booster, the ABS pump will run when applying the brake, and a brake pedal pulsation may be felt during each stop.

The dual brake system provides a reserve braking capacity in the event of a failure to a portion of the hydraulic system. A leak in either half of the dual brake system is indicated by the Brake Warning Light, which will turn on when the brake fluid level in the master cylinder has dropped below a specified level.

The light will remain on until the cause is corrected.



**NOTE:**

The light may flash momentarily during sharp cornering maneuvers, which change fluid level conditions. The vehicle should have service performed, and the brake fluid level checked.

If brake failure is indicated, immediate repair is necessary.

**WARNING!**

Driving a vehicle with the red brake light on is dangerous. Part of the brake system may have failed. It will take longer to stop the vehicle. You could have a collision. Have the vehicle checked immediately.

Vehicles equipped with the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) are also equipped with Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD). In the event of an EBD failure, the Brake Warning Light will turn on along with the ABS Light. Immediate repair to the ABS system is required.

Operation of the Brake Warning Light can be checked by turning the ignition switch from the OFF position to the ON/RUN position.

The light should illuminate for approximately two seconds. The light should then turn off unless the parking brake is applied or a brake fault is detected. If the light does not illuminate, have the light inspected by your authorized dealer.

The light also will turn on when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the ON/RUN position.

**NOTE:**

This light shows only that the parking brake is applied. It does not show the degree of brake application.

● — **Vehicle Security Warning Light — If Equipped**

This light will flash at a fast rate for approximately 15 seconds when the vehicle security alarm is arming, and then will flash slowly until the vehicle is disarmed.

 — **Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light**

This light warns of an overheated engine condition. If the engine coolant temperature is too high, this indicator will illuminate and

a single chime will sound. If the temperature reaches the upper limit, a continuous chime will sound for four minutes or until the engine is able to cool: whichever comes first.

If the light turns on while driving, safely pull over and stop the vehicle. If the A/C system is on, turn it off. Also, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL and idle the vehicle. If the temperature reading does not return to normal, turn the engine off immediately and call for service.

Refer to “If Your Engine Overheats” in “In Case Of Emergency” for further information.

 — **Battery Charge Warning Light**

This light illuminates when the battery is not charging properly. If it stays on while the engine is running, there may be a malfunction with the charging system. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

This indicates a possible problem with the electrical system or a related component.

## — Oil Pressure Warning Light

This warning light will illuminate to indicate low engine oil pressure. If the light turns on while driving, stop the vehicle and shut off the engine as soon as possible. A chime will sound when this light turns on.

Do not operate the vehicle until the cause is corrected. This light does not indicate how much oil is in the engine. The engine oil level must be checked under the hood.

## — Electronic Throttle Control (ETC) Warning Light

This warning light will illuminate to inform of a problem with the Electronic Throttle Control (ETC) system. If a problem is detected while the vehicle is running, the light will either stay on or flash depending on the nature of the problem. Cycle the ignition when the vehicle is safely and completely stopped and the transmission is placed in the PARK position. The light should turn off. If the light remains on with the vehicle running, your vehicle will usually be drivable; however, see an authorized dealer for service as soon as possible.

### NOTE:

This light may turn on if the accelerator and brake pedals are pressed at the same time.

If the light continues to flash when the vehicle is running, immediate service is required and you may experience reduced performance, an elevated/rough idle, or engine stall and your vehicle may require towing. The light will come on when the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN or ACC/ON/RUN position and remain on briefly as a bulb check. If the light does not come on during starting, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

## — Electric Power Steering Fault Warning Light

This light will turn on when there's a fault with the EPS (Electric Power Steering) system. Refer to "Power Steering" in "Starting And Operating" in the Owner's Manual for further information.

### WARNING!

Continued operation with reduced assist could pose a safety risk to yourself and

### WARNING!

others. Service should be obtained as soon as possible.

## — Trailer Brake Disconnected Warning Light

This warning light will illuminate when the Trailer Brake has been disconnected.

## — Oil Temperature Warning Light

This warning light will illuminate to indicate the engine oil temperature is high. If the light turns on while driving, stop the vehicle and shut off the engine as soon as possible. Wait for oil temperature to return to normal levels.

## — Door Open Warning Light

This indicator will illuminate when a door is ajar/open and not fully closed.

### NOTE:

If the vehicle is moving there will also be a single chime.



## Yellow Warning Lights



### — Engine Check/Malfunction Indicator Warning Light (MIL)

The Engine Check/Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) is a part of an Onboard Diagnostic System called OBD II that monitors engine and automatic transmission control systems. This warning light will illuminate when the ignition is in the ON/RUN position before engine start. If the bulb does not come on when turning the ignition switch from OFF to ON/RUN, have the condition checked promptly.

Certain conditions, such as a loose or missing gas cap, poor quality fuel, etc., may illuminate the light after engine start. The vehicle should be serviced if the light stays on through several typical driving styles. In most situations, the vehicle will drive normally and will not require towing.

When the engine is running, the MIL may flash to alert serious conditions that could lead to immediate loss of power or severe catalytic converter damage. The vehicle should be serviced as soon as possible if this occurs.

### WARNING!

A malfunctioning catalytic converter, as referenced above, can reach higher temperatures than in normal operating conditions. This can cause a fire if you drive slowly or park over flammable substances such as dry plants, wood, cardboard, etc. This could result in death or serious injury to the driver, occupants or others.

### CAUTION!

Prolonged driving with the Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) on could cause damage to the vehicle control system. It also could affect fuel economy and driveability. If the MIL is flashing, severe catalytic converter damage and power loss will soon occur. Immediate service is required.



### — Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Active Warning Light — If Equipped

This light will indicate when the Electronic Stability Control system is Active. The “ESC Indicator Light” in the instrument cluster will

come on when the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN or ACC/ON/RUN position, and when ESC is activated. It should go out with the engine running. If the “ESC Indicator Light” comes on continuously with the engine running, a malfunction has been detected in the ESC system. If this light remains on after several ignition cycles, and the vehicle has been driven several miles (kilometers) at speeds greater than 30 mph (48 km/h), see an authorized dealer as soon as possible to have the problem diagnosed and corrected.

- The “ESC Off Indicator Light” and the “ESC Indicator Light” come on momentarily each time the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN or ACC/ON/RUN position.
- The ESC system will make buzzing or clicking sounds when it is active. This is normal; the sounds will stop when ESC becomes inactive.
- This light will come on when the vehicle is in an ESC event.

 — **Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off  
Warning Light — If Equipped**

This light indicates the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is off.

Each time the ignition is turned to ON/RUN or ACC/ON/RUN, the ESC system will be on, even if it was turned off previously.

 — **Low Washer Fluid Warning Light —  
If Equipped**

This warning light will illuminate when the windshield washer fluid is low.

 — **Tire Pressure Monitoring System  
(TPMS) Warning Light**

The warning light switches on and a message is displayed to indicate that the tire pressure is lower than the recommended value and/or that slow pressure loss is occurring. In these cases, optimal tire duration and fuel consumption may not be guaranteed.

Should one or more tires be in the condition mentioned above, the display will show the indications corresponding to each tire in sequence.

**CAUTION!**

Do not continue driving with one or more flat tires as handling may be compromised. Stop the vehicle, avoiding sharp braking and steering. If a tire puncture occurs, repair immediately using the dedicated tire repair kit and contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires

as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.



TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

### CAUTION!

The TPMS has been optimized for the original equipment tires and wheels. TPMS pressures and warning have been established for the tire size equipped on your vehicle. Undesirable system operation or sensor damage may result when using replacement equipment that is not of the same size, type, and/or style. Aftermarket wheels can cause sensor damage. Using aftermarket tire sealants may cause the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) sensor to become inoperable. After using an aftermarket tire sealant it is recommended that you take your vehicle

### CAUTION!

to your authorized dealer to have your sensor function checked.



#### — Low Fuel Indicator Light

When the fuel level reaches approximately 3.0 gal (11.0 L) this light will turn on, and remain on until fuel is added.



#### — Anti-Lock Brake (ABS) Warning Light

This light monitors the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS). The light will turn on when the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN or ACC/ON/RUN position and may stay on for as long as four seconds.

If the ABS light remains on or turns on while driving, then the Anti-Lock portion of the brake system is not functioning and service is required as soon as possible. However, the conventional brake system will continue to operate normally, assuming the Brake Warning Light is not also on.

If the ABS light does not turn on when the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN or ACC/ON/RUN position, have the brake system inspected by an authorized dealer.



#### — Low Coolant Level Warning Light

This telltale will turn on to indicate the vehicle coolant level is low.



#### — Loose Fuel Filler Cap Warning Light — If Equipped

This warning light will illuminate when the fuel filler cap is loose. Properly close the filler cap to disengage the light. If the light does not turn off, please see an authorized dealer.



#### — Service 4WD Warning Light — If Equipped

This warning light will illuminate to signal a fault with the 4WD system. If the light stays on or comes on during driving, it means that the 4WD system is not functioning properly and that service is required. We recommend you drive to the nearest service center and have the vehicle serviced immediately.

## Yellow Indicator Lights

### — Transmission Temperature Warning Light

This light indicates that the transmission fluid temperature is running hot. This may occur with severe usage, such as trailer towing. If this light turns on, safely pull over and stop the vehicle. Then, shift the transmission into PARK and run the engine at idle or slightly higher until the light turns off.

#### **WARNING!**

If you continue operating the vehicle when the Transmission Temperature Warning Light is illuminated you could cause the fluid to boil over, come in contact with hot engine or exhaust components and cause a fire.

#### **CAUTION!**

Continuous driving with the Transmission Temperature Warning Light illuminated will eventually cause severe transmission damage or transmission failure.

### — TOW/HAUL Indicator Light

This indicator light will illuminate when TOW/HAUL mode is selected.

### — Cargo Light — If Equipped

This indicator light will illuminate when the cargo light is activated by pushing the cargo light button on the headlight switch.

### — 4WD Low Indicator Light — If Equipped

This light alerts the driver that the vehicle is in the four-wheel drive LOW mode. The front and rear driveshafts are mechanically locked together forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Low range provides a greater gear reduction ratio to provide increased torque at the wheels.

Refer to “Four-Wheel Drive Operation — If Equipped” in “Starting And Operating” for further information on four-wheel drive operation and proper use.

### **4WD** — 4WD Indicator Light — If Equipped

This light alerts the driver that the vehicle is in the four-wheel drive mode, and the front and rear driveshafts are mechanically locked together forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed.

### **2WD** — 2WD Indicator Light — If Equipped

This light alerts the driver that the vehicle is in the two-wheel drive mode.

## Green Indicator Lights

### — Park/Headlight On Indicator Light

This indicator light will illuminate when the park lights or headlights are turned on.

### — Front Fog Indicator Light — If Equipped

This indicator light will illuminate when the front fog lights are on.

### — Turn Signal Indicator Lights

When the left or right turn signal is activated, the turn signal indicator will flash indepen-



dently and the corresponding exterior turn signal lamps will flash. Turn signals can be activated when the multifunction lever is moved down (left) or up (right).

#### NOTE:

- A continuous chime will sound if the vehicle is driven more than 1 mile (1.6 km) with either turn signal on.
- Check for an inoperative outside light bulb if either indicator flashes at a rapid rate.

#### — Cruise Control Set Indicator Light — If Equipped

This indicator light will illuminate when the speed control is set to the desired speed. Refer to “Speed Control” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

### White Indicator Lights

#### — Cruise Control Ready Indicator

This light will turn on when the speed control is ready, but not set.

#### — Speed Control SET Indicator Light

This light will turn on when the speed control is set. Refer to “Speed Control” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

### Blue Indicator Lights

#### — High Beam Indicator Light

This indicator light will illuminate to indicate that the high beam headlights are on. With the low beams activated, push the multifunction lever forward (toward the front of the vehicle) to turn on the high beams. Pull the multifunction lever rearward (toward the rear of the vehicle) to turn off the high beams. If the high beams are off, pull the lever toward you for a temporary high beam on, “flash to pass” scenario.

### ONBOARD DIAGNOSTIC SYSTEM — OBD II

Your vehicle is equipped with a sophisticated Onboard Diagnostic system called OBD II. This system monitors the performance of the emissions, engine, and transmission control

systems. When these systems are operating properly, your vehicle will provide excellent performance and fuel economy, as well as engine emissions well within current government regulations.

If any of these systems require service, the OBD II system will turn on the Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL). It will also store diagnostic codes and other information to assist your service technician in making repairs. Although your vehicle will usually be drivable and not need towing, see an authorized dealer for service as soon as possible.

#### CAUTION!

- Prolonged driving with the MIL on could cause further damage to the emission control system. It could also affect fuel economy and driveability. The vehicle must be serviced before any emissions tests can be performed.
- If the MIL is flashing while the vehicle is running, severe catalytic converter damage and power loss will soon occur. Immediate service is required.

## Onboard Diagnostic System (OBD II) Cybersecurity

Your vehicle is required to have an Onboard Diagnostic system (OBD II) and a connection port to allow access to information related to the performance of your emissions controls. Authorized service technicians may need to access this information to assist with the diagnosis and service of your vehicle and emissions system.

### WARNING!

- ONLY an authorized service technician should connect equipment to the OBD II connection port in order to read the VIN, diagnose, or service your vehicle.
- If unauthorized equipment is connected to the OBD II connection port, such as a driver-behavior tracking device, it may:
  - Be possible that vehicle systems, including safety related systems, could be impaired or a loss of vehicle control could occur that may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.

### WARNING!

- Access, or allow others to access, information stored in your vehicle systems, including personal information.

For further information, refer to “Cybersecurity” in “Multimedia”.





# SAFETY

## AUXILIARY DRIVING SYSTEMS . . . . .70

Tire Pressure Monitoring System  
(TPMS) . . . . .70

## OCCUPANT RESTRAINT SYSTEMS . . . . .75

Occupant Restraint Systems Features . .75  
Important Safety Precautions . . . . .75

Seat Belt Systems . . . . .76

Supplemental Restraint Systems  
(SRS) . . . . .85

Child Restraints . . . . .94

Transporting Pets . . . . .112

## SAFETY TIPS . . . . .112

Transporting Passengers . . . . .112

Exhaust Gas . . . . .113

Safety Checks You Should Make Inside  
The Vehicle . . . . .113

Periodic Safety Checks You Should  
Make Outside The Vehicle . . . . .115



## AUXILIARY DRIVING SYSTEMS

### Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) will warn the driver of a low tire pressure based on the vehicle recommended cold placard pressure.

The tire pressure will vary with temperature by about 1 psi (7 kPa) for every 12°F (6.5°C). This means that when the outside temperature decreases, the tire pressure will decrease. Tire pressure should always be set based on cold inflation tire pressure. This is defined as the tire pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) after a three hour period. The cold tire inflation pressure must not exceed the maximum inflation pressure molded into the tire sidewall. Refer to “Tires” in “Servicing And Maintenance” for information on how to properly inflate the vehicle's tires. The tire pressure will also increase as the vehicle is driven - this is normal and there should be no adjustment for this increased pressure.

The TPMS will warn the driver of a low tire pressure if the tire pressure falls below the low-pressure warning limit for any reason, including low temperature effects and natural pressure loss through the tire.

The TPMS will continue to warn the driver of low tire pressure as long as the condition exists, and will not turn off until the tire pressure is at or above the recommended cold placard pressure. Once the low tire pressure warning (Tire Pressure Monitoring [TPM] Telltale Light) illuminates, you must increase the tire pressure to the recommended cold placard pressure in order for the TPM Telltale Light to turn off. The system will automatically update and the TPM Telltale Light will turn off once the system receives the updated tire pressures. The vehicle may need to be driven for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (24 km/h) in order for the TPMS to receive this information.

#### NOTE:

When filling warm tires, the tire pressure may need to be increased up to an additional 4 psi (28 kPa) above the recommended cold placard

pressure in order to turn the Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light off.

For example, your vehicle may have a recommended cold (parked for more than three hours) placard pressure of 30 psi (207 kPa). If the ambient temperature is 68°F (20°C) and the measured tire pressure is 27 psi (186 kPa), a temperature drop to 20°F (-7°C) will decrease the tire pressure to approximately 23 psi (158 kPa). This tire pressure is sufficiently low enough to turn on the TPM Telltale Light. Driving the vehicle may cause the tire pressure to rise to approximately 27 psi (186 kPa), but the TPM Telltale Light will still be on. In this situation, the TPM Telltale Light will turn off only after the tires are inflated to the vehicle's recommended cold placard pressure value.

#### CAUTION!

- The TPMS has been optimized for the original equipment tires and wheels. TPMS pressures and warning have been established for the tire size equipped on your vehicle. Undesirable system opera-

## CAUTION!

tion or sensor damage may result when using replacement equipment that is not of the same size, type, and/or style. Aftermarket wheels can cause sensor damage.

- Using aftermarket tire sealants may cause the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) sensor to become inoperable. After using an aftermarket tire sealant it is recommended that you take your vehicle to an authorized dealership to have your sensor function checked.
- After inspecting or adjusting the tire pressure always reinstall the valve stem cap. This will prevent moisture and dirt from entering the valve stem, which could damage the TPMS sensor.

### NOTE:

- The TPMS is not intended to replace normal tire care and maintenance or to provide warning of a tire failure or condition.
- The TPMS should not be used as a tire pressure gauge while adjusting your tire pressure.

- Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.
- The TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure using an accurate tire pressure gauge, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPM Telltale Light.
- Seasonal temperature changes will affect tire pressure, and the TPMS will monitor the actual tire pressure in the tire.

### Premium System

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses wireless technology with wheel rim mounted electronic sensors to monitor tire pressure levels. Sensors, mounted to each wheel as part of the valve stem, transmit tire pressure readings to the receiver module.

### NOTE:

It is particularly important for you to check the tire pressure in all of the tires on your vehicle monthly and to maintain the proper pressure.

The TPMS consists of the following components:

- Receiver module
- Four tire pressure monitoring sensors
- Various tire pressure monitoring system messages, which display in the instrument cluster
- Tire Pressure Monitoring System Warning Light

### Tire Pressure Monitoring Low Pressure Warnings



The "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will illuminate in the instrument cluster and a chime will sound when tire pressure is low in one or more of the four active road tires. In addition, the instrument cluster will display a graphic showing



the pressure values of each tire with the low tire pressure values in a different color. An "Inflate to XX" message will also be displayed.

## EXAMPLE ONLY

Low Tire PSI

27  30

27  21

2345 mi

### "LOW TIRE PRESSURE" Message

Should this occur, you should stop as soon as possible and inflate the tires with a low pressure condition (those in a different color in the instrument cluster graphic) to the vehicle's recommended cold placard pressure inflation value as shown in the "Inflate to XX" message. Once the system receives the updated tire pressures, the system will auto-

matically update, the graphic display in the instrument cluster will return to its original color, and the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will turn off. The vehicle may need to be driven for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (24 km/h) in order for the TPMS to receive this information.

### Service TPMS Warning

If a system fault is detected, the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on solid. The system fault will also sound a chime. In addition, the instrument cluster will display a "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message for a minimum of five seconds and then display dashes (- -) in place of the pressure value to indicate which sensor is not being received.

## EXAMPLE ONLY

Tire PSI

30  33

30  --

### Tire Pressure Monitor Display

If the ignition switch is cycled, this sequence will repeat, providing the system fault still exists. If the system fault no longer exists, the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will no longer flash, and the "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message will no longer display, and a pressure value will display in place of the dashes. A system fault can occur due to any of the following:

- Signal interference due to electronic devices or driving next to facilities emitting the same radio frequencies as the TPM sensors.
- Installing aftermarket window tinting that contains materials that may block radio wave signals.
- Accumulation of snow or ice around the wheels or wheel housings.
- Using tire chains on the vehicle.
- Using wheels/tires not equipped with TPM sensors.

A system fault may occur due to an incorrect TPM sensor location condition. When a system fault occurs due to an incorrect TPM sensor location, the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on solid. The system fault will also sound a chime. In addition, the instrument cluster will display a "Tire Pressure Temporarily Unavailable" message in place of the tire pressure display screen. If the ignition switch is cycled, this sequence will repeat, providing the system fault still exists. If the system fault no longer exists, the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale

Light" will no longer flash and the tire pressure display screen will be displayed showing the tire pressure values for the correct locations.

### **Vehicles With Non Matching Full Size Spare Or Compact Spare**

- The non matching full size spare or compact spare tire does not have a TPM sensor. Therefore, the TPMS will not monitor the pressure in the non matching full size spare or compact spare tire.
- If you install the non matching full size spare or compact spare tire in place of a road tire that has a pressure below the low-pressure warning limit, upon the next ignition switch cycle, the TPM Telltale Light and a "LOW TIRE" message will remain ON and a chime will sound. In addition, the graphic in the instrument cluster will still display a pressure value in a different color and an "Inflate to XX" message.
- After driving the vehicle for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (24 km/h), the TPM Telltale Light will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on solid. In addition, the instrument cluster will display

a "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message for a minimum of five seconds and then display dashes (- -) in place of the pressure value.

- For each subsequent ignition switch cycle, a chime will sound, the TPM Telltale Light will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on solid, and the instrument cluster will display a "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message for a minimum of five seconds and then display dashes (- -) in place of the pressure value.
- Once you repair or replace the original road tire and reinstall it on the vehicle in place of the non matching full size spare or compact spare, the TPMS will update automatically. In addition, the TPM Telltale Light will turn OFF and the graphic in the instrument cluster will display a new pressure value instead of dashes (- -), as long as no tire pressure is below the low-pressure warning limit in any of the four active road tires. The vehicle may need to be driven for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (24 km/h) in order for the TPMS to receive this information.



## **Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS) Chassis Cab — If Equipped**

Your vehicle may be equipped with a Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS).

The Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS) uses wireless technology with wheel rim mounted electronic sensors to transmit tire pressure levels. Sensors mounted to each wheel as part of the valve stem transmit tire pressure readings to the receiver module.

### **NOTE:**

It is particularly important for you to check the tire pressure in all of the tires on your vehicle monthly and to maintain the proper pressure.

The TPIS consists of the following components:

- Receiver module
- Four TPM sensors (Single Rear Wheel [SRW] applications)
- Six TPM sensors (Dual Rear Wheel [DRW] applications)
- Pressure display in the instrument cluster display.

The TPIS system will display all four (Single Rear Wheel [SRW] applications) or six (Dual Rear Wheel [DRW] applications) tire pressure values in the instrument cluster display.

If a system fault is detected, the instrument cluster will display a "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message for a minimum of five seconds and then display dashes (- -) in place of the pressure value to indicate which sensor is not being received.

If the ignition switch is cycled, this sequence will repeat, providing the system fault still exists. If the system fault no longer exists, the "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message will no longer be displayed, and a pressure value will display in place of the dashes. A system fault can occur due to any of the following:

- Signal interference due to electronic devices or driving next to facilities emitting the same radio frequencies as the TPM sensors.
- Installing aftermarket window tinting that contains materials that may block radio wave signals.
- Accumulation of snow or ice around the wheels or wheel housings.

- Using tire chains on the vehicle.
- Using wheels/tires not equipped with TPM sensors.

## **General Information**

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules and RSS 210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### **NOTE:**

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## OCCUPANT RESTRAINT SYSTEMS

Some of the most important safety features in your vehicle are the restraint systems:

### Occupant Restraint Systems Features

- Seat Belt Systems
- Supplemental Restraint Systems (SRS) Air Bags
- Child Restraints

Some of the safety features described in this section may be standard equipment on some models, or may be optional equipment on others. If you are not sure, ask an authorized dealer.

### Important Safety Precautions

Please pay close attention to the information in this section. It tells you how to use your restraint system properly, to keep you and your passengers as safe as possible.

Here are some simple steps you can take to minimize the risk of harm from a deploying air bag:

1. Children 12 years old and under should always ride buckled up in the rear seat of a vehicle with a rear seat.
2. If a child from 2 to 12 years old (not in a rear-facing child restraint) must ride in the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible and use the proper child restraint (refer to “Child Restraints” in this section for further information).
3. Children that are not big enough to wear the vehicle seat belt properly (refer to “Child Restraints” in this section for further information) should be secured in the rear seat of a vehicle with a rear seat in child restraints or belt-positioning booster seats. Older children who do not use child restraints or belt-positioning booster seats should ride properly buckled up in the rear seat of a vehicle with a rear seat.
4. Never allow children to slide the shoulder belt behind them or under their arm.
5. You should read the instructions provided with your child restraint to make sure that you are using it properly.
6. All occupants should always wear their lap and shoulder belts properly.
7. The driver and front passenger seats should be moved back as far as practical to allow the front air bags room to inflate.
8. Do not lean against the door or window. If your vehicle has side air bags, and deployment occurs, the side air bags will inflate forcefully into the space between occupants and the door and occupants could be injured.
9. If the air bag system in this vehicle needs to be modified to accommodate a disabled person, refer to the “Customer Assistance” section for customer service contact information.

#### WARNING!

- Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying passenger front air bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.
- Only use a rear-facing child restraint in the rear seat of a vehicle with a rear seat.



## Seat Belt Systems

Buckle up even though you are an excellent driver, even on short trips. Someone on the road may be a poor driver and could cause a collision that includes you. This can happen far away from home or on your own street.

Research has shown that seat belts save lives, and they can reduce the seriousness of injuries in a collision. Some of the worst injuries happen when people are thrown from the vehicle. Seat belts reduce the possibility of ejection and the risk of injury caused by striking the inside of the vehicle. Everyone in a motor vehicle should be belted at all times.

### Enhanced Seat Belt Use Reminder System (BeltAlert)

#### Driver and Passenger BeltAlert (if equipped)

 BeltAlert is a feature intended to remind the driver and outboard front seat passenger (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) to buckle their seat belts. The Belt Alert feature is active whenever the ignition switch is in the START or ON/RUN position.

#### Initial Indication

If the driver is unbuckled when the ignition switch is first in the START or ON/RUN position, a chime will signal for a few seconds. If the driver or outboard front seat passenger (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) is unbuckled when the ignition switch is first in the START or ON/RUN position the Seat Belt Reminder Light will turn on and remain on until both outboard front seat belts are buckled. The outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert is not active when an outboard front passenger seat is unoccupied.

#### BeltAlert Warning Sequence

The BeltAlert warning sequence is activated when the vehicle is moving above a specified vehicle speed range and the driver or outboard front seat passenger is unbuckled (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) (the outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert is not active when the outboard front passenger seat is unoccupied). The BeltAlert warning sequence starts by blinking the Seat Belt Reminder Light and sounding an intermittent chime. Once the BeltAlert warning sequence has completed, the Seat

Belt Reminder Light will remain on until the seat belts are buckled. The BeltAlert warning sequence may repeat based on vehicle speed until the driver and occupied outboard front seat passenger seat belts are buckled. The driver should instruct all occupants to buckle their seat belts.

#### Change of Status

If the driver or outboard front seat passenger (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) unbuckles their seat belt while the vehicle is traveling, the BeltAlert warning sequence will begin until the seat belts are buckled again.

The outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert is not active when the outboard front passenger seat is unoccupied. BeltAlert may be triggered when an animal or other items are placed on the outboard front passenger seat or when the seat is folded flat (if equipped). It is recommended that pets be restrained in the rear seat (if equipped) in pet harnesses or pet carriers that are secured by seat belts, and cargo is properly stowed.

BeltAlert can be activated or deactivated by an authorized dealer. FCA US LLC does not recommend deactivating BeltAlert.

#### NOTE:

If BeltAlert has been deactivated and the driver or outboard front seat passenger (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) is unbuckled the Seat Belt Reminder Light will turn on and remain on until the driver and outboard front seat passenger seat belts are buckled.

#### Lap/Shoulder Belts

All seating positions except the Crew Cab front center seating position have combination lap/shoulder belts.

The seat belt webbing retractor will lock only during very sudden stops or collisions. This feature allows the shoulder part of the seat belt to move freely with you under normal conditions. However, in a collision the seat belt will lock and reduce your risk of striking the inside of the vehicle or being thrown out of the vehicle.

#### WARNING!

- Relying on the air bags alone could lead to more severe injuries in a collision. The air bags work with your seat belt to restrain you properly. In some collisions, the air bags won't deploy at all. Always wear your seat belt even though you have air bags.
- In a collision, you and your passengers can suffer much greater injuries if you are not properly buckled up. You can strike the interior of your vehicle or other passengers, or you can be thrown out of the vehicle. Always be sure you and others in your vehicle are buckled up properly.
- It is dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.
- Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.

#### WARNING!

- Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly. Occupants, including the driver, should always wear their seat belts whether or not an air bag is also provided at their seating position to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash.
- Wearing your seat belt incorrectly could make your injuries in a collision much worse. You might suffer internal injuries, or you could even slide out of the seat belt. Follow these instructions to wear your seat belt safely and to keep your passengers safe, too.
- Two people should never be belted into a single seat belt. People belted together can crash into one another in a collision, hurting one another badly. Never use a lap/shoulder belt or a lap belt for more than one person, no matter what their size.



**WARNING!**

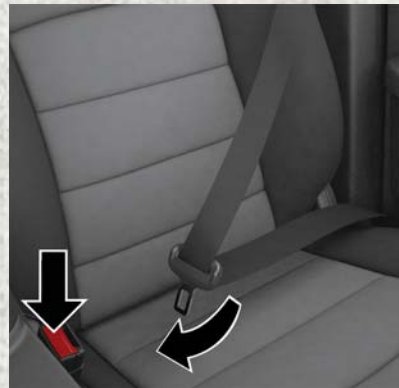
- A lap belt worn too high can increase the risk of injury in a collision. The seat belt forces won't be at the strong hip and pelvic bones, but across your abdomen. Always wear the lap part of your seat belt as low as possible and keep it snug.
- A twisted seat belt may not protect you properly. In a collision, it could even cut into you. Be sure the seat belt is flat against your body, without twists. If you can't straighten a seat belt in your vehicle, take it to an authorized dealer immediately and have it fixed.
- A seat belt that is buckled into the wrong buckle will not protect you properly. The lap portion could ride too high on your body, possibly causing internal injuries. Always buckle your seat belt into the buckle nearest you.
- A seat belt that is too loose will not protect you properly. In a sudden stop, you could move too far forward, increasing the possibility of injury. Wear your seat belt snugly.

**WARNING!**

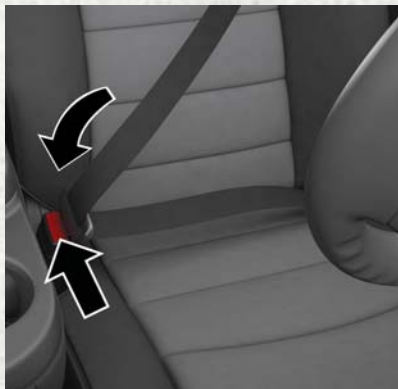
- A seat belt that is worn under your arm is dangerous. Your body could strike the inside surfaces of the vehicle in a collision, increasing head and neck injury. A seat belt worn under the arm can cause internal injuries. Ribs aren't as strong as shoulder bones. Wear the seat belt over your shoulder so that your strongest bones will take the force in a collision.
- A shoulder belt placed behind you will not protect you from injury during a collision. You are more likely to hit your head in a collision if you do not wear your shoulder belt. The lap and shoulder belt are meant to be used together.
- A frayed or torn seat belt could rip apart in a collision and leave you with no protection. Inspect the seat belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, or loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the seat belt system. Seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision.

**Lap/Shoulder Belt Operating Instructions**

1. Enter the vehicle and close the door. Sit back and adjust the seat.
2. The seat belt latch plate is above the back of the front seat, and next to your arm in the rear seat (for vehicles equipped with a rear seat). Grasp the latch plate and pull out the seat belt. Slide the latch plate up the webbing as far as necessary to allow the seat belt to go around your lap.

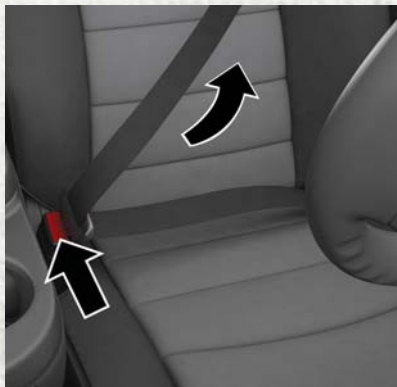
**Pulling Out The Latch Plate**

3. When the seat belt is long enough to fit, insert the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a “click.”



**Inserting Latch Plate Into Buckle**

4. Position the lap belt so that it is snug and lies low across your hips, below your abdomen. To remove slack in the lap belt portion, pull up on the shoulder belt. To loosen the lap belt if it is too tight, tilt the latch plate and pull on the lap belt. A snug seat belt reduces the risk of sliding under the seat belt in a collision.



**Positioning The Lap Belt**

5. Position the shoulder belt across the shoulder and chest with minimal, if any slack so that it is comfortable and not resting on your neck. The retractor will withdraw any slack in the shoulder belt.

6. To release the seat belt, push the red button on the buckle. The seat belt will automatically retract to its stowed position. If necessary, slide the latch plate down the webbing to allow the seat belt to retract fully.

### **Lap/Shoulder Belt Untwisting Procedure**

Use the following procedure to untwist a twisted lap/shoulder belt.

1. Position the latch plate as close as possible to the anchor point.
2. At about 6 to 12 inches (15 to 30 cm) above the latch plate, grasp and twist the seat belt webbing 180 degrees to create a fold that begins immediately above the latch plate.
3. Slide the latch plate upward over the folded webbing. The folded webbing must enter the slot at the top of the latch plate.
4. Continue to slide the latch plate up until it clears the folded webbing and the seat belt is no longer twisted.



### Adjustable Upper Shoulder Belt Anchorage

In the driver and outboard front passenger seats, the top of the shoulder belt can be adjusted upward or downward to position the seat belt away from your neck. Push or squeeze the anchorage button to release the anchorage, and move it up or down to the position that serves you best.



Adjustable Anchorage

As a guide, if you are shorter than average, you will prefer the shoulder belt anchorage in a lower position, and if you are taller than average, you will prefer the shoulder belt anchorage in a higher position. After you release the anchorage button, try to move it up or down to make sure that it is locked in position.

#### NOTE:

The adjustable upper shoulder belt anchorage is equipped with an Easy Up feature. This feature allows the shoulder belt anchorage to be adjusted in the upward position without pushing or squeezing the release button. To verify the shoulder belt anchorage is latched, pull downward on the shoulder belt anchorage until it is locked into position.

#### WARNING!

- Wearing your seat belt incorrectly could make your injuries in a collision much worse. You might suffer internal injuries, or you could even slide out of the seat belt. Follow these instructions to wear

#### WARNING!

your seat belt safely and to keep your passengers safe, too.

- Position the shoulder belt across the shoulder and chest with minimal, if any slack so that it is comfortable and not resting on your neck. The retractor will withdraw any slack in the shoulder belt.
- Misadjustment of the seat belt could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt in a crash.

### First Row Center Seat Belt Operating Instructions (Regular Cab Only)

The first row center seat belt (Regular Cab only) features a seat belt with a mini-latch plate and buckle, which allows the seat belt to detach from the lower anchor when the seat is folded. The latch plate and regular latch plate can then be stored out of the way in the seat for added convenience to open up utilization of the storage areas behind the front seats when the seat is not occupied.

1. Remove the mini-latch plate and regular latch plate from its stowed position on the seat.



**Connect Mini-Latch To Mini-Buckle**



**Mini-Latch And Mini-Buckle Connected**

2. Grasp the mini-latch plate and pull the seat belt over the seat.
3. Route the shoulder belt to the inside of the right head restraint.
4. When the seat belt is long enough to fit, insert the mini-latch plate into the mini-buckle until you hear a “click.”
5. Sit back in seat. Slide the regular latch plate up the webbing as far as necessary to allow the seat belt to go around your lap.
6. When the seat belt is long enough to fit, insert the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a “click.”
7. Position the lap belt so that it is snug and lies low across your hips, below your abdomen. To remove slack in the lap belt portion, pull up on the shoulder belt. To loosen the lap belt if it is too tight, pull on the lap belt. A snug seat belt reduces the risk of sliding under the seat belt in a collision.
8. Position the shoulder belt on your chest so that it is comfortable and not resting on your neck. The retractor will withdraw any slack in the seat belt.
9. To release the seat belt, push the red button on the buckle.
10. To disengage the mini-latch plate from the mini-buckle for storage, insert the regular latch plate into the center red slot on the mini-buckle. The seat belt will automatically retract to its stowed



position. If necessary, slide the latch plate down the webbing to allow the seat belt to retract fully. Insert the mini-latch plate and regular latch plate into its stowed position.



**Detaching Mini-Buckle With Seat Belt Tongue**

### **WARNING!**

- If the mini-latch plate and mini-buckle are not properly connected when the

### **WARNING!**

seat belt is used by an occupant, the seat belt will not be able to provide proper restraint and will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

- When reattaching the mini-latch plate and mini-buckle, ensure the seat belt webbing is not twisted. If the webbing is twisted, follow the preceding procedure to detach the mini-latch plate and mini-buckle, untwist the webbing, and reattach the mini-latch plate and mini-buckle.

### **First Row Center Lap Belt Operating Instructions — If Equipped**

The center seating position for the Crew Cab front seat has a lap belt only. To buckle the lap belt, slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click." To lengthen the lap belt, tilt the latch plate and pull.

To remove slack, pull the loose end of the webbing. Wear the lap belt snug against the hips. Sit back and upright in the seat, then adjust the seat belt as tightly as is comfortable.

### **Seat Belt Extender**

If a seat belt is not long enough to fit properly, even when the webbing is fully extended and the adjustable upper shoulder belt anchorage (if equipped) is in its lowest position, an authorized dealer can provide you with a Seat Belt Extender. The Seat Belt Extender should be used only if the existing seat belt is not long enough. When the Seat Belt Extender is not required for a different occupant, it must be removed.

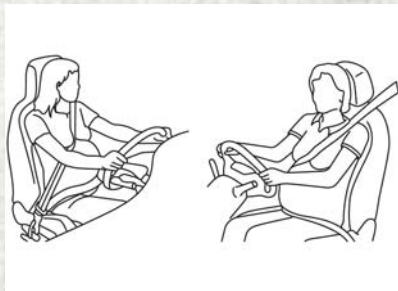
### **WARNING!**

- **ONLY** use a Seat Belt Extender if it is physically required in order to properly fit the original seat belt system. **DO NOT USE** the Seat Belt Extender if, when worn, the distance between the front edge of the Seat Belt Extender buckle and the center of the occupant's body is **LESS** than 6 inches.
- Using a Seat Belt Extender when not needed can increase the risk of serious injury or death in a collision. Only use the Seat Belt Extender when the lap belt

## WARNING!

is not long enough and only use in the recommended seating positions. Remove and store the Seat Belt Extender when not needed.

### Seat Belts And Pregnant Women



### Pregnant Women And Seat Belts

Seat belts must be worn by all occupants including pregnant women: the risk of injury in the event of an accident is reduced for the mother and the unborn child if they are wearing a seat belt.

Position the lap belt snug and low below the abdomen and across the strong bones of the hips. Place the shoulder belt across the chest and away from the neck. Never place the shoulder belt behind the back or under the arm.

### Seat Belt Pretensioner — If Equipped

The front seat belt system may be equipped with pretensioning devices that are designed to remove slack from the seat belt in the event of a collision. These devices may improve the performance of the seat belt by removing slack from the seat belt early in a collision. Pretensioners work for all size occupants, including those in child restraints.

#### NOTE:

These devices are not a substitute for proper seat belt placement by the occupant. The seat belt still must be worn snugly and positioned properly.

The pretensioners are triggered by the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC). Like the air bags, the pretensioners are single use items. A deployed pretensioner or a deployed air bag must be replaced immediately.

### Energy Management Feature — If Equipped

The front seat belt system may be equipped with an Energy Management feature that may help further reduce the risk of injury in the event of a collision. The seat belt system has a retractor assembly that is designed to release webbing in a controlled manner.

### Switchable Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR)

The seat belts in the passenger seating positions may be equipped with a Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) which is used to secure a child restraint system. For additional information, refer to “Installing Child Restraints Using The Vehicle Seat Belt” under the “Child Restraints” section of this manual. The figure below illustrates the locking feature for each seating position.





### Regular Cab Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) Locations

ALR = Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor



### Crew Cab Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) Locations

ALR = Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor

If the passenger seating position is equipped with an ALR and is being used for normal usage, only pull the seat belt webbing out far enough to comfortably wrap around the occupant's mid-section so as to not activate the ALR. If the ALR is activated, you will hear a clicking sound as the seat belt retracts. Allow the webbing to retract completely in this case and then carefully pull out only the amount of

webbing necessary to comfortably wrap around the occupant's mid-section. Slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click."

In Automatic Locking Mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The seat belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. Use the Automatic Locking Mode anytime a child restraint is installed in a seating position that has a seat belt with this feature. Children 12 years old and under should always be properly restrained in the rear seat of a vehicle with a rear seat.

### WARNING!

- Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying passenger front air bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.
- Only use a rear-facing child restraint in the rear seat of a vehicle with a rear seat.

### How To Engage The Automatic Locking Mode

1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire seat belt is extracted.
3. Allow the seat belt to retract. As the seat belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the seat belt is now in the Automatic Locking Mode.

### How To Disengage The Automatic Locking Mode

Unbuckle the combination lap/shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the Automatic Locking Mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

#### WARNING!

- The seat belt assembly must be replaced if the switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) feature or any other seat belt function is not working properly when checked according to the procedures in the Service Manual.

#### WARNING!

- Failure to replace the seat belt assembly could increase the risk of injury in collisions.
- Do not use the Automatic Locking Mode to restrain occupants who are wearing the seat belt or children who are using booster seats. The locked mode is only used to install rear-facing or forward-facing child restraints that have a harness for restraining the child.

### Supplemental Restraint Systems (SRS)

Some of the safety features described in this section may be standard equipment on some models, or may be optional equipment on others. If you are not sure, ask an authorized dealer.

The air bag system must be ready to protect you in a collision. The Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) monitors the internal circuits and interconnecting wiring associated

with the electrical Air Bag System Components. Your vehicle may be equipped with the following Air Bag System Components:

#### Air Bag System Components

- Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC)
- Air Bag Warning Light 
- Steering Wheel and Column
- Instrument Panel
- Knee Impact Bolsters
- Driver and Front Passenger Air Bags
- Seat Belt Buckle Switch
- Supplemental Side Air Bags — If Equipped
- Front and Side Impact Sensors — If Equipped
- Seat Belt Pretensioners — If Equipped

#### Air Bag Warning Light

 The ORC monitors the readiness of the electronic parts of the air bag system whenever the ignition switch is in the START or



ON/RUN position. If the ignition switch is in the OFF position or in the ACC position, the air bag system is not on and the air bags will not inflate.

The ORC contains a backup power supply system that may deploy the air bag system even if the battery loses power or it becomes disconnected prior to deployment.

The ORC turns on the Air Bag Warning Light in the instrument panel for approximately four to eight seconds for a self-check when the ignition switch is first in the ON/RUN position. After the self-check, the Air Bag Warning Light will turn off. If the ORC detects a malfunction in any part of the system, it turns on the Air Bag Warning Light, either momentarily or continuously. A single chime will sound to alert you if the light comes on again after initial startup.

The ORC also includes diagnostics that will illuminate the instrument panel Air Bag Warning Light if a malfunction is detected that could affect the air bag system. The

diagnostics also record the nature of the malfunction. While the air bag system is designed to be maintenance free, if any of the following occurs, have an authorized dealer service the air bag system immediately.

- The Air Bag Warning Light does not come on during the four to eight seconds when the ignition switch is first in the ON/RUN position.
- The Air Bag Warning Light remains on after the four to eight-second interval.
- The Air Bag Warning Light comes on intermittently or remains on while driving.

#### NOTE:

If the speedometer, tachometer, or any engine related gauges are not working, the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) may also be disabled. In this condition the air bags may not be ready to inflate for your protection. Have an authorized dealer service the air bag system immediately.

### WARNING!

Ignoring the Air Bag Warning Light in your instrument panel could mean you won't have the air bag system to protect you in a collision. If the light does not come on as a bulb check when the ignition is first turned on, stays on after you start the vehicle, or if it comes on as you drive, have an authorized dealer service the air bag system immediately.

#### Front Air Bags

This vehicle has front air bags and lap/shoulder belts for both the driver and front passenger. The front air bags are a supplement to the seat belt restraint systems. The driver front air bag is mounted in the center of the steering wheel. The passenger front air bag is mounted in the instrument panel, above the glove compartment. The words "SRS AIRBAG" or "AIRBAG" are embossed on the air bag covers.



### Front Air Bag/Knee Bolster Locations

- 1 — Driver And Passenger Front Air Bags
- 2 — Driver And Passenger Knee Impact Bolsters

### WARNING!

- Being too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel during front air bag deployment could cause serious injury, including death. Air bags need room to

### WARNING!

inflate. Sit back, comfortably extending your arms to reach the steering wheel or instrument panel.

- Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying passenger front air bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.
- Only use a rear-facing child restraint in the rear seat of a vehicle with a rear seat.

### Driver And Passenger Front Air Bag Features

The Advanced Front Air Bag system has multistage driver and front passenger air bags. This system provides output appropriate to the severity and type of collision as determined by the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC), which may receive information from the front impact sensors (if equipped) or other system components.

The first stage inflator is triggered immediately during an impact that requires air bag deployment. A low energy output is used in

less severe collisions. A higher energy output is used for more severe collisions.

This vehicle may be equipped with a driver and/or front passenger seat belt buckle switch that detects whether the driver or front passenger seat belt is buckled. The seat belt buckle switch may adjust the inflation rate of the Advanced Front Air Bags.

### WARNING!

- No objects should be placed over or near the air bag on the instrument panel or steering wheel because any such objects could cause harm if the vehicle is in a collision severe enough to cause the air bag to inflate.
- Do not put anything on or around the air bag covers or attempt to open them manually. You may damage the air bags and you could be injured because the air bags may no longer be functional. The protective covers for the air bag cushions are designed to open only when the air bags are inflating.



**WARNING!**

- Relying on the air bags alone could lead to more severe injuries in a collision. The air bags work with your seat belt to restrain you properly. In some collisions, air bags won't deploy at all. Always wear your seat belts even though you have air bags.

**Front Air Bag Operation**

Front Air Bags are designed to provide additional protection by supplementing the seat belts. Front air bags are not expected to reduce the risk of injury in rear, side, or rollover collisions. The front air bags will not deploy in all frontal collisions, including some that may produce substantial vehicle damage — for example, some pole collisions, truck underrides, and angle offset collisions.

On the other hand, depending on the type and location of impact, front air bags may deploy in crashes with little vehicle front-end damage but that produce a severe initial deceleration.

Because air bag sensors measure vehicle deceleration over time, vehicle speed and damage by themselves are not good indicators of whether or not an air bag should have deployed.

Seat belts are necessary for your protection in all collisions, and also are needed to help keep you in position, away from an inflating air bag.

When the ORC detects a collision requiring the front air bags, it signals the inflator units. A large quantity of non-toxic gas is generated to inflate the front air bags.

The steering wheel hub trim cover and the upper passenger side of the instrument panel separate and fold out of the way as the air bags inflate to their full size. The front air bags fully inflate in less time than it takes to blink your eyes. The front air bags then quickly deflate while helping to restrain the driver and front passenger.

**Knee Impact Bolsters**

The Knee Impact Bolsters help protect the knees of the driver and front passenger, and

position the front occupants for improved interaction with the front air bags.

**WARNING!**

- Do not drill, cut, or tamper with the knee impact bolsters in any way.
- Do not mount any accessories to the knee impact bolsters such as alarm lights, stereos, citizen band radios, etc.

**Supplemental Side Air Bags****Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Air Bags (SABs) — If Equipped**

Your vehicle may be equipped with Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Air Bags (SABs). If your vehicle is equipped with Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Air Bags (SABs), please refer to the information below.

Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Air Bags (SABs) are located in the outboard side of the front seats. The SABs are marked with "SRS AIRBAG" or "AIRBAG" on a label or on the seat trim on the outboard side of the seats.



**Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Air Bag Label**

The SABs (if equipped with SABs) may help to reduce the risk of occupant injury during certain side impacts, in addition to the injury reduction potential provided by the seat belts and body structure.

When the SAB deploys, it opens the seam on the outboard side of the seatback's trim cover. The inflating SAB deploys through the seat seam into the space between the occupant and the door. The SAB moves at a very

high speed and with such a high force that it could injure occupants if they are not seated properly, or if items are positioned in the area where the SAB inflates. Children are at an even greater risk of injury from a deploying air bag.

### **WARNING!**

Do not use accessory seat covers or place objects between you and the Side Air Bags; the performance could be adversely affected and/or objects could be pushed into you, causing serious injury.

### **Supplemental Side Air Bag Inflatable Curtains (SABICs) — If Equipped**

Your vehicle may be equipped with Supplemental Side Air Bag Inflatable Curtains (SABICs). If your vehicle is equipped with Supplemental Side Air Bag Inflatable Curtains (SABICs), please refer to the information below.

Supplemental Side Air Bag Inflatable Curtains (SABICs) are located above the side windows. The trim covering the SABICs is labeled "SRS AIRBAG" or "AIRBAG."



**Supplemental Side Air Bag Inflatable Curtain (SABIC) Label Location**

SABICs (if equipped with SABICs) may help reduce the risk of head and other injuries to front and rear seat outboard occupants in certain side impacts, in addition to the injury reduction potential provided by the seat belts and body structure.

The SABIC deploys downward, covering the side windows. An inflating SABIC pushes the outside edge of the headliner out of the way and covers the window. The SABICs inflate



with enough force to injure occupants if they are not belted and seated properly, or if items are positioned in the area where the SABICs inflate. Children are at an even greater risk of injury from a deploying air bag.

The SABICs (if equipped with SABICs) may help reduce the risk of partial or complete ejection of vehicle occupants through side windows in certain side impact events.

### WARNING!

- Do not mount equipment, or stack luggage or other cargo up high enough to block the deployment of the SABICs. The trim covering above the side windows where the SABIC and its deployment path are located should remain free from any obstructions.
- In order for the SABICs to work as intended, do not install any accessory items in your vehicle which could alter the roof. Do not add an aftermarket sunroof to your vehicle. Do not add roof racks that require permanent attachments (bolts or screws) for installation

### WARNING!

on the vehicle roof. Do not drill into the roof of the vehicle for any reason.

### Side Impacts

The Side Air Bags are designed to activate in certain side impacts. The Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) determines whether the deployment of the Side Air Bags in a particular impact event is appropriate, based on the severity and type of collision. The side impact sensors aid the ORC in determining the appropriate response to impact events. The system is calibrated to deploy the Side Air Bags on the impact side of the vehicle during impacts that require Side Air Bag occupant protection. In side impacts, the Side Air Bags deploy independently; a left side impact deploys the left Side Air Bags only and a right-side impact deploys the right Side Air Bags only. Vehicle damage by itself is not a good indicator of whether or not Side Air Bags should have deployed.

The Side Air Bags will not deploy in all side collisions, including some collisions at certain angles, or some side collisions that do

not impact the area of the passenger compartment. The Side Air Bags may deploy during angled or offset frontal collisions where the front air bags deploy.

Side Air Bags are a supplement to the seat belt restraint system. Side Air Bags deploy in less time than it takes to blink your eyes.

### WARNING!

- Occupants, including children, who are up against or very close to Side Air Bags can be seriously injured or killed. Occupants, including children, should never lean on or sleep against the door, side windows, or area where the side air bags inflate, even if they are in an infant or child restraint.
- Seat belts (and child restraints where appropriate) are necessary for your protection in all collisions. They also help keep you in position, away from an inflating Side Air Bag. To get the best protection from the Side Air Bags, occupants must wear their seat belts properly and sit upright with their backs against

## WARNING!

the seats. Children must be properly restrained in a child restraint or booster seat that is appropriate for the size of the child.

## WARNING!

- Side Air Bags need room to inflate. Do not lean against the door or window. Sit upright in the center of the seat.
- Being too close to the Side Air Bags during deployment could cause you to be severely injured or killed.
- Relying on the Side Air Bags alone could lead to more severe injuries in a collision. The Side Air Bags work with your seat belt to restrain you properly. In some collisions, Side Air Bags won't deploy at all. Always wear your seat belt even though you have Side Air Bags.

### NOTE:

Air bag covers may not be obvious in the interior trim, but they will open during air bag deployment.

### 3500 Models With GVW Under 10,000 lbs:

#### Rollover Events

Side Air Bags are designed to activate in certain rollover events. The Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) determines whether the deployment of the Side Air Bags in a particular rollover event is appropriate, based on the severity and type of collision. Vehicle damage by itself is not a good indicator of whether or not Side Air Bags should have deployed.

The Side Air Bags may not deploy in all rollover events. The rollover sensing-system determines if a rollover event may be in progress and whether deployment is appropriate.

Depending on the version of software in your vehicle, the Side Air Bags may deploy in one of the following ways:

1. A slower-developing rollover event may deploy the seat belt pretensioners on both sides of the vehicle. A faster-developing rollover event may deploy the seat belt pretensioners as well as the Side Air Bags on both sides of the vehicle. The rollover

sensing-system may also deploy the seat belt pretensioners, with or without the Side Air Bags, on both sides of the vehicle if the vehicle experiences a near rollover event.

Or

2. In the event the vehicle experiences a rollover or near rollover event, and deployment of the Side Air Bags is appropriate, the rollover sensing system will also deploy the seat belt pretensioners on both sides of the vehicle.

The SABICs may help reduce the risk of partial or complete ejection of vehicle occupants through side windows in certain rollover or side impact events.

#### Air Bag System Components

### NOTE:

The Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) monitors the internal circuits and interconnecting wiring associated with electrical Air Bag System Components listed below:

- Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC)
- Air Bag Warning Light 



- Steering Wheel and Column
- Instrument Panel
- Knee Impact Bolsters
- Driver and Front Passenger Air Bags
- Seat Belt Buckle Switch
- Supplemental Side Air Bags — If Equipped
- Front and Side Impact Sensors — If Equipped
- Seat Belt Pretensioners — If Equipped

### If A Deployment Occurs

The front air bags are designed to deflate immediately after deployment.

#### NOTE:

Front and/or side air bags will not deploy in all collisions. This does not mean something is wrong with the air bag system.

If you do have a collision which deploys the air bags, any or all of the following may occur:

- The air bag material may sometimes cause abrasions and/or skin reddening to the occupants as the air bags deploy and unfold. The abrasions are similar to friction rope burns or those you might get sliding along a

carpet or gymnasium floor. They are not caused by contact with chemicals. They are not permanent and normally heal quickly. However, if you haven't healed significantly within a few days, or if you have any blistering, see your doctor immediately.

- As the air bags deflate, you may see some smoke-like particles. The particles are a normal by-product of the process that generates the non-toxic gas used for air bag inflation. These airborne particles may irritate the skin, eyes, nose, or throat. If you have skin or eye irritation, rinse the area with cool water. For nose or throat irritation, move to fresh air. If the irritation continues, see your doctor. If these particles settle on your clothing, follow the garment manufacturer's instructions for cleaning.

Do not drive your vehicle after the air bags have deployed. If you are involved in another collision, the air bags will not be in place to protect you.

#### WARNING!

Deployed air bags and seat belt pretensioners cannot protect you in another collision.

#### WARNING!

Have the air bags, seat belt pretensioners, and the seat belt retractor assemblies replaced by an authorized dealer immediately. Also, have the Occupant Restraint Controller System serviced as well.

#### NOTE:

- Air bag covers may not be obvious in the interior trim, but they will open during air bag deployment.
- After any collision, the vehicle should be taken to an authorized dealer immediately.

### Enhanced Accident Response System

In the event of an impact, if the communication network remains intact, and the power remains intact, depending on the nature of the event, the ORC will determine whether to have the Enhanced Accident Response System perform the following functions:

- Cut off fuel to the engine (If Equipped)
- Cut off battery power to the electric motor (If Equipped)

- Flash hazard lights as long as the battery has power
- Turn on the interior lights, which remain on as long as the battery has power or for 15 minutes from the intervention of the Enhanced Accident Response System.
- Unlock the power door locks.

Your vehicle may also be designed to perform any of these other functions in response to the Enhanced Accident Response System:

- Turn off the Fuel Filter Heater, Turn off the HVAC Blower Motor, Close the HVAC Circulation Door
- Cut off battery power to the:
  - Engine
  - Electric Motor (if equipped)
  - Electric power steering
  - Brake booster
  - Electric park brake
  - Automatic transmission gear selector
  - Horn
  - Front wiper
  - Headlamp washer pump

#### NOTE:

After an accident, remember to cycle the ignition to the STOP (OFF/LOCK) position and remove the key from the ignition switch to avoid draining the battery. Carefully check the vehicle for fuel leaks in the engine compartment and on the ground near the engine compartment and fuel tank before resetting the system and starting the engine. If there are no fuel leaks or damage to the vehicle electrical devices (e.g. headlights) after an accident, reset the system by following the procedure described below.

#### Enhanced Accident Response System Reset Procedure

In order to reset the Enhanced Accident Response System functions after an event, the ignition switch must be changed from ignition START or ON/RUN to ignition OFF. Carefully check the vehicle for fuel leaks in the engine compartment and on the ground near the engine compartment and fuel tank before resetting the system and starting the engine.

#### Maintaining Your Air Bag System

##### WARNING!

- Modifications to any part of the air bag system could cause it to fail when you need it. You could be injured if the air bag system is not there to protect you. Do not modify the components or wiring, including adding any kind of badges or stickers to the steering wheel hub trim cover or the upper passenger side of the instrument panel. Do not modify the front bumper, vehicle body structure, or add aftermarket side steps or running boards.
- It is dangerous to try to repair any part of the air bag system yourself. Be sure to tell anyone who works on your vehicle that it has an air bag system.
- Do not attempt to modify any part of your air bag system. The air bag may inflate accidentally or may not function properly if modifications are made. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer for any air bag system service. If your seat, including your trim cover and cushion,



**WARNING!**

needs to be serviced in any way (including removal or loosening/tightening of seat attachment bolts), take the vehicle to an authorized dealer. Only manufacturer approved seat accessories may be used. If it is necessary to modify the air bag system for persons with disabilities, contact an authorized dealer.

**Event Data Recorder (EDR)**

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;

- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

**NOTE:**

EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such

as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

**Child Restraints**

Everyone in your vehicle needs to be buckled up at all times, including babies and children. Every state in the United States, and every Canadian province, requires that small children ride in proper restraint systems. This is the law, and you can be prosecuted for ignoring it.

Children 12 years or younger should ride properly buckled up in a rear seat, if available. According to crash statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats rather than in the front.

**WARNING!**

In a collision, an unrestrained child can become a projectile inside the vehicle. The force required to hold even an infant on your lap could become so great that you could not hold the child, no matter how strong you are. The child and others could

## WARNING!

be badly injured or killed. Any child riding in your vehicle should be in a proper restraint for the child's size.

There are different sizes and types of restraints for children from newborn size to the child almost large enough for an adult safety belt. Always check the child seat Owner's Manual to make sure you have the correct

seat for your child. Carefully read and follow all the instructions and warnings in the child restraint Owner's Manual and on all the labels attached to the child restraint.

Before buying any restraint system, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets all applicable Safety Standards. You should also make sure that you can install it in the vehicle where you will use it.

## NOTE:

- For additional information, refer to [www.safercar.gov/parents/index.htm](http://www.safercar.gov/parents/index.htm) or call: 1-888-327-4236
- Canadian residents should refer to Transport Canada's website for additional information: <http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/motorvehiclesafety/safedrivers-childsafety-index-53.htm>

## Summary Of Recommendations For Restraining Children In Vehicles

|                                         | Child Size, Height, Weight Or Age                                                                                            | Recommended Type Of Child Restraint                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Infants and Toddlers                    | Children who are two years old or younger and who have not reached the height or weight limits of their child restraint      | Either an Infant Carrier or a Convertible Child Restraint, facing rearward in the rear seat of the vehicle |
| Small Children                          | Children who are at least two years old or who have outgrown the height or weight limit of their rear-facing child restraint | Forward-Facing Child Restraint with a five-point Harness, facing forward in the rear seat of the vehicle   |
| Larger Children                         | Children who have outgrown their forward-facing child restraint, but are too small to properly fit the vehicle's seat belt   | Belt Positioning Booster Seat and the vehicle seat belt, seated in the rear seat of the vehicle            |
| Children Too Large for Child Restraints | Children 12 years old or younger, who have outgrown the height or weight limit of their booster seat                         | Vehicle Seat Belt, seated in the rear seat of the vehicle                                                  |



## Infant And Child Restraints

Safety experts recommend that children ride rear-facing in the vehicle until they are two years old or until they reach either the height or weight limit of their rear-facing child restraint. Two types of child restraints can be used rear-facing: infant carriers and convertible child seats.

The infant carrier is only used rear-facing in the vehicle. It is recommended for children from birth until they reach the weight or height limit of the infant carrier. Convertible child seats can be used either rear-facing or forward-facing in the vehicle. Convertible child seats often have a higher weight limit in the rear-facing direction than infant carriers do, so they can be used rear-facing by children who have outgrown their infant carrier but are still less than at least two years old.

Children should remain rear-facing until they reach the highest weight or height allowed by their convertible child seat.

### WARNING!

- Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying passenger front air bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.
- Only use a rear-facing child restraint in the rear seat of a vehicle with a rear seat.

### WARNING!

Do not install a rear-facing car seat using a rear support leg in this vehicle. The floor of this vehicle is not designed to manage the crash forces of this type of car seat. In a

### WARNING!

crash, the support leg may not function as it was designed by the car seat manufacturer, and your child may be more severely injured as a result.



## Older Children And Child Restraints

Children who are two years old or who have outgrown their rear-facing convertible child seat can ride forward-facing in the vehicle. Forward-facing child seats and convertible child seats used in the forward-facing direction are for children who are over two years old or who have outgrown the rear-facing weight or height limit of their rear-facing convertible child seat. Children should remain in a forward-facing child seat with a harness for as long as possible, up to the highest weight or height allowed by the child seat.

All children whose weight or height is above the forward-facing limit for the child seat should use a belt-positioning booster seat until the vehicle's seat belts fit properly. If the child cannot sit with knees bent over the vehicle's seat cushion while the child's back is against the seatback, they should use a belt-positioning booster seat. The child and belt-positioning booster seat are held in the vehicle by the seat belt.

### WARNING!

- Improper installation can lead to failure of an infant or child restraint. It could come loose in a collision. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.
- After a child restraint is installed in the vehicle, do not move the vehicle seat forward or rearward because it can loosen the child restraint attachments. Remove the child restraint before adjusting the vehicle seat position. When the vehicle seat has been adjusted, re-install the child restraint.
- When your child restraint is not in use, secure it in the vehicle with the seat belt or LATCH anchorages, or remove it from the vehicle. Do not leave it loose in the vehicle. In a sudden stop or accident, it could strike the occupants or seatbacks and cause serious personal injury.

## Children Too Large For Booster Seats

Children who are large enough to wear the shoulder belt comfortably, and whose legs are long enough to bend over the front of the seat when their back is against the seatback, should use the seat belt in a rear seat. Use this simple 5-step test to decide whether the child can use the vehicle's seat belt alone:

1. Can the child sit all the way back against the back of the vehicle seat?
2. Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the front of the vehicle seat – while the child is still sitting all the way back?
3. Does the shoulder belt cross the child's shoulder between their neck and arm?
4. Is the lap part of the belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs and not the stomach?



5. Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If the answer to any of these questions was “no,” then the child still needs to use a booster seat in this vehicle. If the child is using the lap/shoulder belt, check seat belt fit periodically and make sure the seat belt buckle is latched. A child’s squirming or slouching can move the belt out of position.

If the shoulder belt contacts the face or neck, move the child closer to the center of the vehicle, or use a booster seat to position the seat belt on the child correctly.

### WARNING!

Never allow a child to put the shoulder belt under an arm or behind their back. In a

### WARNING!

crash, the shoulder belt will not protect a child properly, which may result in serious injury or death. A child must always wear both the lap and shoulder portions of the seat belt correctly.

### Recommendations For Attaching Child Restraints

| Restraint Type                 | Combined Weight of the Child + Child Restraint | Use Any Attachment Method Shown With An “X” Below |                |                                           |                               |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
|                                |                                                | LATCH – Lower Anchors Only                        | Seat Belt Only | LATCH – Lower Anchors + Top Tether Anchor | Seat Belt + Top Tether Anchor |
| Rear-Facing Child Restraint    | Up to 65 lbs (29.5 kg)                         | X                                                 | X              |                                           |                               |
| Rear-Facing Child Restraint    | More than 65 lbs (29.5 kg)                     |                                                   | X              |                                           |                               |
| Forward-Facing Child Restraint | Up to 65 lbs (29.5 kg)                         |                                                   |                | X                                         | X                             |
| Forward-Facing Child Restraint | More than 65 lbs (29.5 kg)                     |                                                   |                |                                           | X                             |

## Lower Anchors And Tethers For Children (LATCH) Restraint System



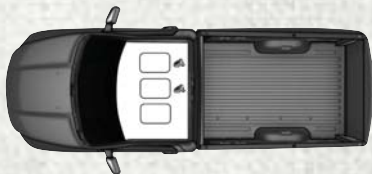
LATCH Label

Your vehicle is equipped with the child restraint anchorage system called LATCH, which stands for Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children. The LATCH system has three vehicle anchor points for installing LATCH-equipped child seats. There are two lower anchorages located at the back of the seat cushion where it meets the seatback and one top tether anchorage located behind the seating position. These anchorages are used to

install LATCH-equipped child seats without using the vehicle's seat belts. Some seating positions may have a top tether anchorage but no lower anchorages. In these seating positions, the seat belt must be used with the top tether anchorage to install the child restraint. Please see the following table for more information.

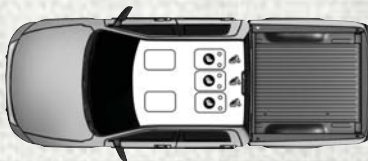


## LATCH Positions For Installing Child Restraints In This Vehicle



### Regular Cab LATCH Positions

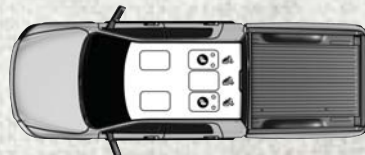
 Top Tether Anchorage Symbol



### Crew Cab 60/40 Split Bench LATCH Positions

 Lower Anchorage Symbol (2 Anchorage Per Seating Position)

 Top Tether Anchorage Symbol



### Crew Cab Full Bench LATCH Positions

 Lower Anchorage Symbol (2 Anchorage Per Seating Position)

 Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

### Frequently Asked Questions About Installing Child Restraints With LATCH

|                                                                                                                                               |                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| What is the weight limit (child's weight + weight of the child restraint) for using the LATCH anchorage system to attach the child restraint? | 65 lbs (29.5 kg) | Use the LATCH anchorage system until the combined weight of the child and the child restraint is 65 lbs (29.5 kg). Use the seat belt and tether anchor instead of the LATCH system once the combined weight is more than 65 lbs (29.5 kg). |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### Frequently Asked Questions About Installing Child Restraints With LATCH

|                                                                                                                        |     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Can the LATCH anchorages and the seat belt be used together to attach a rear-facing or forward-facing child restraint? | No  | Do not use the seat belt when you use the LATCH anchorage system to attach a rear-facing or forward-facing child restraint.<br>Booster seats may be attached to the LATCH anchorages if allowed by the booster seat manufacturer. See your booster seat owner's manual for more information. |
| Can a child seat be installed in the center position using the inner LATCH lower anchorages?                           | No  | Full bench rear seat only: Use the seat belt and tether anchor to install a child seat in the center seating position.                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Can two child restraints be attached using a common lower LATCH anchorage?                                             | No  | Never "share" a LATCH anchorage with two or more child restraints. If the center position does not have dedicated LATCH lower anchorages, use the seat belt to install a child seat in the center position next to a child seat using the LATCH anchorages in an outboard position.          |
| Can the rear-facing child restraint touch the back of the front passenger seat?                                        | Yes | The child seat may touch the back of the front passenger seat if the child restraint manufacturer also allows contact. See your child restraint owner's manual for more information.                                                                                                         |
| Can the head restraints be removed?                                                                                    | Yes | The head restraints can be removed in each seating position.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |



### Locating The LATCH Anchorages — Crew Cab Only

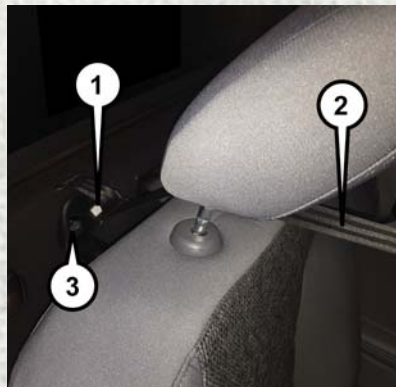
 The lower anchorages are round bars that are found at the rear of the seat cushion where it meets the seatback. They are just visible when you lean into the rear seat to install the child restraint. You will easily feel them if you run your finger along the gap between the seatback and seat cushion.



**Lower Anchors**

### Locating The Upper Tether Anchorages

 Regular Cab models have tether strap anchorages behind the front center and right seats. Crew Cab models have tether strap anchorages located behind each of the rear seats.



**Regular Cab Tether Anchorages**

- 1 — Tether Strap Hook
- 2 — Tether Strap To Child Restraint
- 3 — Tether Anchor



**Crew Cab Outboard Tether Anchorage**



**Crew Cab Center Tether Anchorage With Head Restraint In Raised Position**

LATCH-compatible child restraint systems will be equipped with a rigid bar or a flexible strap on each side. Each will have a hook or connector to attach to the lower anchorage and a way to tighten the connection to the anchorage. Forward-facing child restraints and some rear-facing child restraints will also be equipped with a tether strap. The tether strap will have a hook at the end to attach to the top tether anchorage and a way to tighten the strap after it is attached to the anchorage.

### Center Seat LATCH

**Regular Cab Or Crew Cab Full Bench Rear Seat:  
No Lower Center LATCH Anchorages Available**

#### WARNING!

- Do not install a child restraint in the center position using the LATCH system. This position is not approved for installing child seats using the LATCH attachments. You must use the seat belt and tether anchor to install a child seat in the center seating position.
- Never use the same lower anchorage to attach more than one child restraint.

#### WARNING!

Please refer to "To Install A LATCH-Compatible Child Restraint" for typical installation instructions.

### Crew Cab Split Bench Rear Seat: Center LATCH Anchorages Available

If a child restraint installed in the center position blocks the seat belt webbing or buckle for the outboard position, do not use that outboard position. If a child seat in the center position blocks the outboard LATCH anchors or seat belt, do not install a child seat in that outboard position.

#### WARNING!

Never use the same lower anchorage to attach more than one child restraint. Please refer to "To Install A LATCH-Compatible Child Restraint" for typical installation instructions.

**Always follow the directions of the child restraint manufacturer when installing your child restraint. Not all child restraint systems will be installed as described here.**

### To Install A LATCH-Compatible Child Restraint

If the selected seating position has a Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) seat belt, stow the seat belt, following the instructions below. See the section "Installing Child Restraints Using the Vehicle Seat Belt" to check what type of seat belt each seating position has.

1. Loosen the adjusters on the lower straps and on the tether strap of the child seat so that you can more easily attach the hooks or connectors to the vehicle anchorages.
2. Place the child seat between the lower anchorages for that seating position. For some second row seats, you may need to recline the seat and / or raise the head restraint to get a better fit. If the rear seat can be moved forward and rearward in the vehicle, you may wish to move it to its rear-most position to make room for the child seat. You may also move the front seat forward to allow more room for the child seat.



3. Attach the lower hooks or connectors of the child restraint to the lower anchorages in the selected seating position.
4. If the child restraint has a tether strap, connect it to the top tether anchorage. See the section “Installing Child Restraints Using the Top Tether Anchorage” for directions to attach a tether anchor.
5. Tighten all of the straps as you push the child restraint rearward and downward into the seat. Remove slack in the straps according to the child restraint manufacturer’s instructions.
6. Test that the child restraint is installed tightly by pulling back and forth on the child seat at the belt path. It should not move more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) in any direction.

### **How To Stow An Unused Switchable-ALR (ALR) Seat Belt:**

When using the LATCH attaching system to install a child restraint, stow all ALR seat belts that are not being used by other occupants or being used to secure child restraints. An unused belt could injure a child if they

play with it and accidentally lock the seat belt retractor. Before installing a child restraint using the LATCH system, buckle the seat belt behind the child restraint and out of the child’s reach. If the buckled seat belt interferes with the child restraint installation, instead of buckling it behind the child restraint, route the seat belt through the child restraint belt path and then buckle it. Do not lock the seat belt. Remind all children in the vehicle that the seat belts are not toys and that they should not play with them.

### **WARNING!**

- Improper installation of a child restraint to the LATCH anchorages can lead to failure of the restraint. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the child restraint manufacturer’s directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.
- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly-fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or

### **WARNING!**

for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

### **Installing Child Restraints Using The Vehicle Seat Belt**

Child restraint systems are designed to be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap/shoulder belt.

### **WARNING!**

- Improper installation or failure to properly secure a child restraint can lead to failure of the restraint. The child could be badly injured or killed.
- Follow the child restraint manufacturer’s directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.

### **Regular Cab Only**

The seat belts in the passenger seating positions are equipped with a Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) that is designed to keep the lap portion of the seat belt tight around the child restraint so that it is

not necessary to use a locking clip. The ALR retractor can be “switched” into a locked mode by pulling all of the webbing out of the retractor and then letting the webbing retract back into the retractor. If it is locked, the ALR will make a clicking noise while the webbing is pulled back into the retractor. Refer to the “Automatic Locking Mode” description in “Switchable Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR)” under “Occupant Restraint Systems” for additional information on ALR.

### Crew Cab: Split Bench And Full Bench

The seat belts in the passenger seating positions are equipped with either a Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) or a cinching latch plate or both. Both types of seat belts are designed to keep the lap portion of the seat belt tight around the child restraint so that it is not necessary to use a locking clip. The ALR retractor can be “switched” into a locked mode by pulling all of the webbing out of the retractor and then letting the webbing retract back into the retractor. If it is locked, the ALR will make a clicking noise while the webbing is pulled back into the retractor. Refer to the “Automatic Locking Mode” description in “Switchable Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR)” under “Oc-

cupant Restraint Systems” for additional information on ALR. The cinching latch plate is designed to hold the lap portion of the seat belt tight when webbing is pulled tight and straight through a child restraint’s belt path.

Please see the table below and the following sections for more information.

### Lap/Shoulder Belt Systems For Installing Child Restraints In This Vehicle



#### Regular Cab Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) Locations

ALR = Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor

 Top Tether Anchorage Symbol



#### Crew Cab Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) Locations

Cinching Latchplate = Cinching Latchplate

ALR = Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor

 Top Tether Anchorage Symbol



### Frequently Asked Questions About Installing Child Restraints With Seat Belts

|                                                                                                                                                                      |                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| What is the weight limit (child's weight + weight of the child restraint) for using the Tether Anchor with the seat belt to attach a forward facing child restraint? | Weight limit of the Child Restraint    | Always use the tether anchor when using the seat belt to install a forward facing child restraint, up to the recommended weight limit of the child restraint.                   |
| Can the rear-facing child restraint touch the back of the front passenger seat?                                                                                      | Yes                                    | Contact between the front passenger seat and the child restraint is allowed, if the child restraint manufacturer also allows contact.                                           |
| Can the head restraints be removed?                                                                                                                                  | Yes                                    | The head restraints can be removed in each seating position.                                                                                                                    |
| Can the buckle stalk be twisted to tighten the seat belt against the belt path of the child restraint?                                                               | Yes – Cinching Latch Plate<br>No – ALR | In positions with cinching latch plates (CINCH), the buckle stalk may be twisted up to 3 full turns. Do not twist the buckle stalk in a seating position with an ALR retractor. |

### Installing A Child Restraint With A Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR):

Child restraint systems are designed to be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap/shoulder belt.

#### WARNING!

- Improper installation or failure to properly secure a child restraint can lead to failure of the restraint. The child could be badly injured or killed.

#### WARNING!

- Follow the child restraint manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.

#### 1. For Crew Cab Models

Place the child seat in the center of the seating position. For some second row seats, you may need to recline the seat and/or raise the head restraint to get a better fit. If the rear seat can be moved forward and rearward in the vehicle, you

may wish to move it to its rear-most position to make room for the child seat. You may also move the front seat forward to allow more room for the child seat.

#### For Regular Cab Models

Place the child seat in the center of the seating position. Move the vehicle seat as far rearward as possible to keep the child as far from the passenger air bag as possible.

2. Pull enough of the seat belt webbing from the retractor to pass it through the belt path of the child restraint. Do not twist the belt webbing in the belt path.
3. Slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a “click.”
4. Pull on the webbing to make the lap portion tight against the child seat.
5. To lock the seat belt, pull down on the shoulder part of the belt until you have pulled all the seat belt webbing out of the retractor. Then, allow the webbing to retract back into the retractor. As the webbing retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This means the seat belt is now in the Automatic Locking mode.
6. Try to pull the webbing out of the retractor. If it is locked, you should not be able to pull out any webbing. If the retractor is not locked, repeat step 5.
7. Finally, pull up on any excess webbing to tighten the lap portion around the child restraint while you push the child restraint rearward and downward into the vehicle seat.

8. If the child restraint has a top tether strap and the seating position has a top tether anchorage, connect the tether strap to the anchorage and tighten the tether strap. See the section “Installing Child Restraints Using the Top Tether Anchorage” for directions to attach a tether anchor.
9. Test that the child restraint is installed tightly by pulling back and forth on the child seat at the belt path. It should not move more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) in any direction.

Any seat belt system will loosen with time, so check the belt occasionally, and pull it tight if necessary.

### **Installing A Child Restraint With A Cinching Latch Plate (CINCH) — If Equipped:**

Child restraint systems are designed to be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap/shoulder belt.

### **WARNING!**

- Improper installation or failure to properly secure a child restraint can lead to

### **WARNING!**

failure of the restraint. The child could be badly injured or killed.

- Follow the child restraint manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.
1. Place the child seat in the center of the seating position. For some second row seats, you may need to recline the seat and / or raise the head restraint to get a better fit. If the rear seat can be moved forward and rearward in the vehicle, you may wish to move it to its rear-most position to make room for the child seat. You may also move the front seat forward to allow more room for the child seat.
  2. Next, pull enough of the seat belt webbing from the retractor to pass it through the belt path of the child restraint. Do not twist the belt webbing in the belt path.
  3. Slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a “click.”



4. Finally, pull up on any excess webbing to tighten the lap portion around the child restraint while you push the child restraint rearward and downward into the vehicle seat.
5. If the child restraint has a top tether strap and the seating position has a top tether anchorage, connect the tether strap to the anchorage and tighten the tether strap. See the section “Installing Child Restraints Using the Top Tether Anchorage” for directions to attach a tether anchor.
6. Test that the child restraint is installed tightly by pulling back and forth on the child seat at the belt path. It should not move more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) in any direction.

Any seat belt system will loosen with time, so check the belt occasionally, and pull it tight if necessary.

If the buckle or the cinching latch plate is too close to the belt path opening of the child restraint, you may have trouble tightening the seat belt. If this happens, disconnect the latch plate from the buckle and twist the short buckle-end belt up to three full turns to

shorten it. Insert the latch plate into the buckle with the release button facing out, away from the child restraint. Repeat steps 4 to 6, above, to complete the installation of the child restraint.

If the belt still cannot be tightened after you shorten the buckle, disconnect the latch plate from the buckle, turn the buckle around one half turn, and insert the latch plate into the buckle again. If you still cannot make the child restraint installation tight, try a different seating position.

### Installing Child Restraints Using The Top Tether Anchorage

#### WARNING!

Do not attach a tether strap for a rear-facing car seat to any location in front of the car seat, including the seat frame or a tether anchorage. Only attach the tether strap of a rear-facing car seat to the tether anchorage that is approved for that seating position, located behind the top of the vehicle seat. See the section “Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHILDREN (LATCH)

#### WARNING!

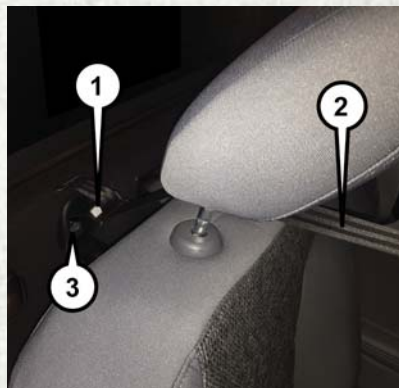
Restraint System” for the location of approved tether anchorages in your vehicle.



#### Regular Cab Trucks:

In the regular cab truck, the top tether anchorages are located behind the center and right passenger seats. There is a plastic cover over each anchorage. To attach the tether strap of the child restraint:

1. Place the child restraint on the seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach over the seat back, under the head restraint and to the tether anchor directly behind the seat.



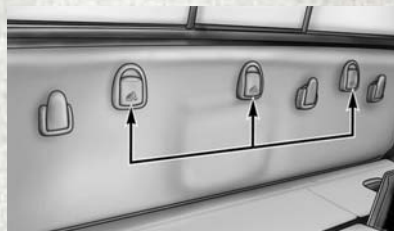
### Regular Cab Tether Anchorages

- 1 — Tether Strap Hook
- 2 — Tether Strap To Child Restraint
- 3 — Tether Anchor

2. Route the tether strap to provide the most direct path between the anchorage and the child seat. The tether strap should go between the head restraint posts underneath the head restraint. You may need to

adjust the head restraint to the upward position to pass the tether strap underneath the head restraint and between its posts.

3. Lift the cover (if so equipped), and attach the hook to the square opening in the sheet metal. Tighten the tether strap according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.



### Regular Or Crew Cab Tether Anchorages

### WARNING!

Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying Passenger Front Air Bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.

### Crew Cab Trucks:

The top tether anchorages in this vehicle are tether strap loops located between the rear glass and the back of the rear seat. There is a tether strap loop located behind each seating position. Follow the steps below to attach the tether strap of the child restraint.

### Right Or Left Outboard Seats:

1. Raise the head restraint and reach between the rear seat and rear glass to access the tether strap loop.





**Head Restraint In Raised Position**



**Tether Strap Loop With Center Head Restraint In Raised Position**

2. Place a child restraint on the seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach over the seat back, under the head restraint, through the tether strap loop behind the seat and over to the tether strap loop behind the center seat.
3. Pass the tether strap hook under the head restraint behind the child seat, through the tether strap loop behind the seat and over to the center tether strap loop.



**Tether Strap Through Outboard Tether Strap Loop**

4. Attach the hook to the center tether strap loop (see diagram). Tighten the tether strap according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.



**Tether Strap Through Outboard Tether Strap Loop And Attached To Center Tether Strap Loop**

**NOTE:**

If there are child seats in both of the outboard (left and right) seating positions, the tether strap hooks of both child seats should be connected to the center tether strap loop. This is the correct way to tether two outboard child seats.

**Center Seat:**

1. Raise the head restraint and reach between the rear seat and rear glass to access the tether strap loop.



**Tether Strap Loop With Head Restraint In Raised Position**



**Tether Strap Through Center Tether Strap Loop**



**Tether Strap Through Center Tether Strap Loop And Attached To Outboard Tether Strap Loop**

2. Place a child restraint on the seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach over the seat back, under the head restraint, through the tether strap loop behind the seat and over to the tether strap loop behind either the right or left outboard seat.
3. Pass the tether strap hook under the head restraint behind the child seat, through the tether strap loop behind the seat and over to the right or left outboard tether strap loop.

4. Attach the hook to the outboard tether strap loop (see diagram). Tighten the tether strap according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

#### **Installing Three Child Restraints:**

1. Place a child restraint on each outboard rear seat. Route the tether straps following the directions for right and left seating positions, above.
2. Attach both hooks to the center tether strap loop, but do not tighten the straps yet.
3. Place a child restraint on the center rear seat. Route the tether strap following the directions for the center seating position, above.



4. Attach the hook to the outboard tether strap loop.
5. Tighten the tether straps according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions, tightening the right and left tether straps before the center tether strap.



**Outboard And Center Seating Positions Shown**

### **WARNING!**

- An incorrectly anchored tether strap could lead to increased head motion and possible injury to the child. Use only the anchorage position directly behind the child seat to secure a child restraint top tether strap.

### **WARNING!**

- If your vehicle is equipped with a split rear seat, make sure the tether strap does not slip into the opening between the seatbacks as you remove slack in the strap.

## **Transporting Pets**

Air Bags deploying in the front seat could harm your pet. An unrestrained pet will be thrown about and possibly injured, or injure a passenger during panic braking or in a collision.

Pets should be restrained in the rear seat in pet harnesses or pet carriers that are secured by seat belts.

## **SAFETY TIPS**

### **Transporting Passengers**

NEVER TRANSPORT PASSENGERS IN THE CARGO AREA.

### **WARNING!**

- Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build-up may cause serious injury or death.
- It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.
- Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.
- Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.

## Exhaust Gas

### WARNING!

Exhaust gases can injure or kill. They contain carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Breathing it can make you unconscious and can eventually poison you. To avoid breathing (CO), follow these safety tips:

- Do not run the engine in a closed garage or in confined areas any longer than needed to move your vehicle in or out of the area.
- If you are required to drive with the trunk/liftgate/rear doors open, make sure that all windows are closed and the climate control BLOWER switch is set at high speed. DO NOT use the recirculation mode.
- If it is necessary to sit in a parked vehicle with the engine running, adjust your heating or cooling controls to force outside air into the vehicle. Set the blower at high speed.

The best protection against carbon monoxide entry into the vehicle body is a properly maintained engine exhaust system.

Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system, when exhaust fumes can be detected inside the vehicle, or when the underside or rear of the vehicle is damaged, have a competent mechanic inspect the complete exhaust system and adjacent body areas for broken, damaged, deteriorated, or mispositioned parts. Open seams or loose connections could permit exhaust fumes to seep into the passenger compartment. In addition, inspect the exhaust system each time the vehicle is raised for lubrication or oil change. Replace as required.

## Safety Checks You Should Make Inside The Vehicle

### Seat Belts

Inspect the seat belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, and loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the system.

Front seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision. Rear seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision if they have been damaged (i.e., bent retractor, torn webbing, etc.). If there is any question regarding seat belt or retractor condition, replace the seat belt.

### Air Bag Warning Light

The Air Bag warning light  will turn on for four to eight seconds as a bulb check when the ignition switch is first turned to ON/RUN. If the light is either not on during starting, stays on, or turns on while driving, have the system inspected at your authorized dealer as soon as possible. After the bulb check, this light will illuminate with a single chime when a fault with the Air Bag System has been detected. It will stay on until the fault is removed. If the light comes on intermittently or remains on while driving, have your authorized dealer service the vehicle immediately.

Refer to “Occupant Restraint Systems” in “Safety” for further information.



## Defroster

Check operation by selecting the defrost mode and place the blower control on high speed. You should be able to feel the air directed against the windshield. See your authorized dealer for service if your defroster is inoperable.

## Floor Mat Safety Information

Always use floor mats designed to fit your vehicle. Only use a floor mat that does not interfere with the operation of the accelerator, brake or clutch pedals. Only use a floor mat that is securely attached using the floor mat fasteners so it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the accelerator, brake or clutch pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

### WARNING!

An improperly attached, damaged, folded, or stacked floor mat, or damaged floor mat fasteners may cause your floor mat to interfere with the accelerator, brake, or clutch pedals and cause a loss of vehicle

### WARNING!

control. To prevent **SERIOUS INJURY** or **DEATH**:

- ALWAYS securely attach  your floor mat using the floor mat fasteners. DO NOT install your floor mat upside down or turn your floor mat over. Lightly pull to confirm mat is secured using the floor mat fasteners on a regular basis.
- ALWAYS REMOVE THE EXISTING FLOOR MAT FROM THE VEHICLE  before installing any other floor mat. NEVER install or stack an additional floor mat on top of an existing floor mat.
- ONLY install floor mats designed to fit your vehicle. NEVER install a floor mat that cannot be properly attached and secured to your vehicle. If a floor mat needs to be replaced, only use a FCA approved floor mat for the specific make, model, and year of your vehicle.
- ONLY use the driver's side floor mat on the driver's side floor area. To check for interference, with the vehicle properly parked with the engine off, fully depress the accelerator, the brake, and the

### WARNING!

clutch pedal (if present) to check for interference. If your floor mat interferes with the operation of any pedal, or is not secure to the floor, remove the floor mat from the vehicle and place the floor mat in your trunk.

- ONLY use the passenger's side floor mat on the passenger's side floor area.
- ALWAYS make sure objects cannot fall or slide into the driver's side floor area when the vehicle is moving. Objects can become trapped under accelerator, brake, or clutch pedals and could cause a loss of vehicle control.
- NEVER place any objects under the floor mat (e.g., towels, keys, etc.). These objects could change the position of the floor mat and may cause interference with the accelerator, brake, or clutch pedals.
- If the vehicle carpet has been removed and re-installed, always properly attach carpet to the floor and check the floor mat fasteners are secure to the vehicle carpet. Fully depress each pedal to

## WARNING!

check for interference with the accelerator, brake, or clutch pedals then re-install the floor mats.

- It is recommended to only use mild soap and water to clean your floor mats. After cleaning, always check your floor mat has been properly installed and is secured to your vehicle using the floor mat fasteners by lightly pulling mat.

## Periodic Safety Checks You Should Make Outside The Vehicle

### Tires

Examine tires for excessive tread wear and uneven wear patterns. Check for stones, nails, glass, or other objects lodged in the tread or sidewall. Inspect the tread for cuts and cracks. Inspect sidewalls for cuts, cracks, and bulges. Check the wheel bolts for tightness. Check the tires (including spare) for proper cold inflation pressure.

### Lights

Have someone observe the operation of brake lights and exterior lights while you work the controls. Check turn signal and high beam indicator lights on the instrument panel.

### Door Latches

Check for proper closing, latching, and locking.

### Fluid Leaks

Check area under the vehicle after overnight parking for fuel, coolant, oil, or other fluid leaks. Also, if gasoline fumes are detected or if fuel, or brake fluid leaks are suspected. The cause should be located and corrected immediately.





# STARTING AND OPERATING

## STARTING THE ENGINE — GASOLINE

### ENGINE . . . . .118

Normal Starting . . . . .118

## STARTING THE ENGINE — 6.7L DIESEL

### ENGINE . . . . .119

Keyless Enter-N-Go — Ignition . . . . .120

Extreme Cold Weather . . . . .122

## NORMAL OPERATION — 6.7L DIESEL

### ENGINE . . . . .123

Cold Weather Precautions . . . . .123

Engine Idling . . . . .123

Stopping The Engine . . . . .124

## ENGINE BREAK-IN

### RECOMMENDATIONS — GASOLINE

### ENGINE . . . . .125

## ENGINE BREAK-IN

### RECOMMENDATIONS —

### 6.7L DIESEL . . . . .126

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION . . . . .126

Key Ignition Park Interlock . . . . .127

Brake/Transmission Shift Interlock

System . . . . .127

Six-Speed Automatic Transmission —

If Equipped . . . . .128

## FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE OPERATION —

### IF EQUIPPED . . . . .130

Electronically Shifted Transfer Case

(Four-Position Switch) —

If Equipped . . . . .130

## SPEED CONTROL . . . . .131

To Activate . . . . .132

To Set A Desired Speed . . . . .132

To Vary The Speed Setting . . . . .132

To Accelerate For Passing . . . . .133

To Resume Speed . . . . .133

To Deactivate . . . . .133

## PARKSENSE FRONT AND REAR PARK

### ASSIST — IF EQUIPPED . . . . .133

Cleaning The ParkSense System . . . . .134

## PARKVIEW REAR BACK UP CAMERA —

### IF EQUIPPED . . . . .134

## REFUELING THE VEHICLE — GAS . . . .136

Materials Added To Fuel . . . . .136

## REFUELING THE VEHICLE — DIESEL

### CHASSIS CAB MODELS . . . . .137

Diesel Exhaust Fluid . . . . .137

Diesel Exhaust Fluid Storage . . . . .138

Adding Diesel Exhaust Fluid . . . . .138

## TRAILER TOWING . . . . .140

Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum

Trailer Weight Ratings) . . . . .140

Towing Requirements . . . . .140

## RECREATIONAL TOWING

### (BEHIND MOTORHOME, ETC.) . . . . .144

Towing This Vehicle Behind Another

Vehicle . . . . .144

Recreational Towing — Two-Wheel

Drive Models . . . . .144

Recreational Towing — Four-Wheel

Drive Models . . . . .145



## STARTING THE ENGINE — GASOLINE ENGINE

Before starting your vehicle, adjust your seat, adjust both inside and outside mirrors, and fasten your seat belt.

The starter should not be operated for more than 10-second intervals. Waiting a few seconds between such intervals will protect the starter from overheating.

### WARNING!

- When leaving the vehicle, always make sure the keyless ignition node is in the "OFF" mode, remove the key fob from the vehicle and lock the vehicle.
- Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the gear selector.

### WARNING!

- Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle, or in a location accessible to children, and do not leave the ignition of a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.
- Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build-up may cause serious injury or death.

### Normal Starting

Normal starting of either a warm or cold engine is obtained without pumping or pressing the accelerator pedal. Cycle the ignition to the RUN position and release when the engine starts. If the engine fails to start within 10 seconds, cycle the ignition to the OFF position, wait five seconds, then repeat the "Normal Starting" procedure.

### To Turn On The Engine Using The ENGINE START/STOP Button

1. Transmission must be in PARK or NEUTRAL.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal while pushing the ENGINE START/STOP button once.
3. The system takes over and attempts to start the vehicle. If the vehicle fails to start, the starter will disengage automatically after 10 seconds.
4. If you wish to stop the cranking of the engine prior to the engine starting, push the button again.

### NOTE:

Normal starting of either a cold or a warm engine is obtained without pumping or pressing the accelerator pedal.

### To Turn Off The Engine Using ENGINE START/STOP Button

1. Place the gear selector in PARK, then push and release the ENGINE START/STOP button.

2. The ignition switch will return to the OFF mode.
3. If the gear selector is not in PARK (with vehicle stopped) and the ENGINE START/STOP button is pushed once, the transmission will automatically select PARK and the engine will turn off, however the ignition will remain in the ACC mode (NOT the OFF mode). Never leave a vehicle out of the PARK position, or it could roll.
4. If the vehicle speed is above 5 mph (8 km/h), the ENGINE START/STOP button must be held for two seconds (or three short pushes in a row) to turn the engine off. The ignition will remain in the ACC mode (NOT the OFF mode) if the engine is turned off when the transmission is not in PARK.

**NOTE:**

If the ignition switch is left in the ACC or RUN (engine not running) mode and the transmission is in PARK, the system will automatically time out after 30 minutes of inactivity and the ignition will switch to the OFF mode.

### Idle Shutdown — 6.4L Engine Only

This feature can be enabled so that the truck will automatically shutdown when the truck has been idling for a set period of time when the engine is at operating temperature. Idle time can be set in 5 minute increments between 5 and 60 minutes. See your local authorized dealer to enable this feature.

**NOTE:**

The idle shut down timer is disabled while the PTO is active.

### ENGINE START/STOP Button Functions — With Driver's Foot OFF The Brake Pedal (In PARK Or NEUTRAL Position)

The ENGINE START/STOP button operates similar to an ignition switch. It has three positions, OFF, ACC, RUN. To change the ignition switch positions without starting the vehicle and use the accessories follow these steps:

1. Starting with the ignition in the OFF position:
2. Push the ENGINE START/STOP button once to change the ignition to the ACC position.
3. Push the ENGINE START/STOP button a second time to change the ignition to the RUN position.
4. Push the ENGINE START/STOP button a third time to return the ignition to the OFF position.

## STARTING THE ENGINE — 6.7L DIESEL ENGINE

Before starting your vehicle, adjust your seat, adjust both inside and outside mirrors, and fasten your seat belts.

The starter should not be operated for more than 15-second intervals. Waiting a few minutes between such intervals will protect the starter from overheating.



**WARNING!**

- Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build up may cause serious injury or death.
- When leaving the vehicle, always make sure the keyless ignition node is in the "OFF" mode, remove the key fob from the vehicle and lock the vehicle.
- Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the gear selector.
- Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle, or in a location accessible to children, and do not leave the ignition of a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

**Keyless Enter-N-Go — Ignition**

This feature allows the driver to operate the ignition switch with the push of a button, as long as the Remote Start/Keyless Enter-N-Go key fob is in the passenger compartment.

**Normal Starting****Using The ENGINE START/STOP Button**

1. The transmission must be in PARK or NEUTRAL.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal while pushing the ENGINE START/STOP button once.
3. The system takes over and attempts to start the vehicle. If the vehicle fails to start, the starter will disengage automatically after 25 seconds.
4. If you wish to stop the cranking of the engine prior to the engine starting, remove your foot from the brake pedal and push the button again.

**NOTE:**

- Normal starting of either a cold or a warm engine is obtained without pumping or pressing the accelerator pedal.
- Under cold weather conditions, the engine may not immediately crank if the "Wait To Start" telltale is illuminated. This is normal operation. For vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go, the vehicle will automatically crank when the "Wait To Start" time has elapsed. See the section "Starting Procedure Engine Manifold Air Temperature 0°F to 66°F (18° C to 19°C)" in the Diesel Supplement for more information.

**To Turn Off The Engine Using ENGINE START/STOP Button**

1. Place the gear selector in PARK, then push and release the ENGINE START/STOP button.
2. The ignition will return to the OFF mode.
3. If the gear selector is not in PARK and the ENGINE START/STOP button is pushed once, the instrument cluster will display a

“Vehicle Not In Park” message and the engine will remain running. Never leave a vehicle out of the PARK position, or it could roll.

4. If the gear selector is in NEUTRAL, and the vehicle speed below 5 mph (8 km/h), pushing the START/STOP button once will turn the engine off. The ignition will remain in the ACC mode.
5. If the vehicle speed is above 5 mph (8 km/h), the ENGINE START/STOP button must be held for two seconds (or three short pushes in a row) to turn the engine off. The ignition will remain in the ACC mode (NOT the OFF mode) if the engine is turned off when the transmission is not in PARK.

**NOTE:**

If the ignition is left in the ACC or ON/RUN (engine not running) mode and the transmission is in PARK, the system will automatically time out after 30 minutes of inactivity and the ignition return to the OFF mode.

**ENGINE START/STOP Button Functions — With Driver's Foot OFF The Brake Pedal (In PARK Or NEUTRAL Position)**

The ENGINE START/STOP button operates similar to an ignition switch. It has three positions, OFF, ACC, RUN. To change the ignition switch positions without starting the vehicle and use the accessories follow these steps:

1. Starting with the ignition in the OFF position:
2. Push the ENGINE START/STOP button once to change the ignition to the ACC position.
3. Push the ENGINE START/STOP button a second time to change the ignition to the RUN position.
4. Push the ENGINE START/STOP button a third time to return the ignition to the OFF position.

**Keyless Enter-N-Go Starting Procedure — Engine Manifold Air Temperature 0° F To 66° F (–18° C to 19° C)**

**NOTE:**

The temperature displayed in the instrument cluster does not necessarily reflect the engine manifold air temperature. Refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” for further information. When engine temperatures fall below 66°F (19°C) the “Wait To Start Light” will remain on indicating the intake manifold heater system is active.

Follow the steps in the “Normal Starting” procedure except:

1. Pushing the engine start button with the driver's foot on the brake will move the ignition from OFF or ACC to RUN, and will illuminate the "Wait To Start" telltale. The engine will not immediately crank, this is normal operation.
2. The “Wait To Start” telltale will remain on for a period of time that varies depending on the engine temperature.



- While the "Wait to Start" telltale is on, the instrument cluster will additionally display a gauge or bar whose initial length represents the full "Wait to Start" time period. Its length will decrease until it disappears when the "Wait to Start" time has elapsed.

### CAUTION!

If the "Water in Fuel Indicator Light" remains on, DO NOT START engine before you drain the water from the fuel filters to avoid engine damage. Refer to "Draining Fuel/Water Separator Filter" in "Servicing And Maintenance" in your Diesel Supplement for further information, which can be found with your online Owner's Information.

- After the engine "Wait To Start" telltale goes off, the engine will automatically crank.

### CAUTION!

Do not crank engine for more than 15 seconds at a time or starter motor damage may result. Turn the ignition switch to the

### CAUTION!

OFF position and wait at least two minutes for the starter to cool before repeating start procedure.

- After engine start-up, check to see that there is oil pressure.
- Allow the engine to idle about three minutes until the manifold heaters have completed the post-heat cycle.
- Release the parking brake and drive.

### NOTE:

- Engine idle speed will automatically increase to 1,000 RPM and engage the Variable Geometry Turbocharger at low coolant temperatures to improve engine warm-up.
- The engine may not automatically crank after the engine "Wait To Start" telltale goes off if a door or the hood is ajar.
- If the engine stalls, or if the ignition switch is left ON for more than two minutes after the "Wait To Start Light" goes out, reset the grid heaters by turning the ignition switch to the OFF position for at least five seconds and then back ON. Repeat steps 1 through

7 of "Keyless Enter-N-Go Starting Procedure – Engine Manifold Air Temperature Below 66° F (19° C)."

## Extreme Cold Weather

The Cummins diesel engine is equipped with several features designed to assist cold weather starting and operation:

- The engine block heater is a resistance heater installed in the water jacket of the engine just above and behind the oil filter. It requires a 110–115 Volt AC electrical outlet with a grounded, three-wire extension cord.

### NOTE:

The engine block heater cord is a factory installed option. If your vehicle is not equipped, heater cords are available from your authorized Mopar dealer.

- A 12 Volt heater built into the fuel filter housings aid in preventing fuel gelling. It is controlled by a built-in thermostat.
- A heated intake air system both improves engine starting and reduces the amount of white smoke generated by a warming engine.

## NORMAL OPERATION — 6.7L DIESEL ENGINE

Observe the following when the engine is operating.

- All message center lights are off.
- Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) is off.
- Engine oil pressure is above 10 psi (69 kPa) at idle.
- Voltmeter operation:

The voltmeter may show a gauge fluctuation at various engine temperatures. This cycling operation is caused by the post-heat cycle of the intake manifold heater system. The number of cycles and the length of the cycling operation is controlled by the engine control module. Post-heat operation can run for several minutes, and then the electrical system and voltmeter needle will stabilize.

The cycling action will cause temporary dimming of the headlamps, interior lamps, and also a noticeable reduction in blower motor speed.

## Cold Weather Precautions

Operation in ambient temperature below 32°F (0°C) may require special considerations. The following charts suggest these options:

### Winter Front Cover Usage

A winter front or cold weather cover is to be used in ambient temperatures below 32°F (0°C), especially during extended idle conditions. This cover is equipped with four flaps for managing total grille opening in varying ambient temperatures. If a winter front or cold weather cover is to be used the flaps should be left in the full open position to allow air flow to the charge air cooler and automatic transmission oil cooler. When ambient temperatures drop below 0°F (-17°C) the four flaps need to be closed. A suitable cold weather cover is available from your Mopar dealer.

### Engine Idling

Avoid prolonged idling, long periods of idling may be harmful to your engine because combustion chamber temperatures can drop so

low that the fuel may not burn completely. Incomplete combustion allows carbon and varnish to form on piston rings, engine valves, and injector nozzles. Also, the unburned fuel can enter the crankcase, diluting the oil and causing rapid wear to the engine.

If the engine is allowed to idle or the truck is driven on low engine speed drive cycles for more than 2 hours, the system will automatically enter an emissions operating mode that will increase the engine idle speed to 900 RPM (1050 RPM for Chassis Cab). While in this mode, which is designed to help maintain the diesel particulate filter, the engine idle speed will return to normal when the brake pedal is applied. A small change in engine tone or a slight change in engine performance while accelerating may also be noticeable at speeds below 20 mph (32 kmh). This operating mode may last for up to an hour of idle time, or around 20 minutes of driving time.

Your truck may have been ordered with an optional voltage monitoring idle up feature. If a load is placed on the electrical system while the truck is in park, this feature will attempt



to maintain normal system voltage by automatically increasing engine idle speed. You may notice several consecutive increases in idle speed, up to a maximum of 1450 RPM, as the system will attempt to utilize the smallest increase in idle speed necessary to maintain normal system voltage. The idle speed will return to normal when either the electrical load is removed, or when the brake pedal is applied.

#### **NOTE:**

For instrument cluster display messages related to the vehicle's exhaust system, refer to "Instrument Cluster Display" in "Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

#### **Idle-Up Feature — Automatic Transmission Only**

The driver-controlled high idle speed feature will help increase cylinder temperatures and provide additional cab heat, however, excessive idling may still cause the exhaust after-treatment system to not properly regenerate. Extended periods of idle time should be avoided.

The Idle-Up feature uses the speed control switches to increase engine idle speed and quickly warm the vehicle's interior.

1. With the transmission in PARK, the parking brake applied, and the engine running, push the speed control switch to the ON position, then push the SET switch.
2. The engine RPM will go up to 1100 RPM. To increase the RPM, push and hold the ACCEL/RESUME switch and the idle speed will increase to approximately 1500 RPM. To decrease the RPM, push and hold the DECEL switch and the idle speed will decrease to approximately 1100 RPM.
3. To cancel the Idle-Up feature, either push the CANCEL switch, push the ON/OFF switch, or press the brake pedal.

#### **Stopping The Engine**

Idle the engine a few minutes before routine shutdown. After full load operation, idle the engine three to five minutes before shutting it down. This idle period will allow the lubricat-

ing oil and coolant to carry excess heat away from the combustion chamber, bearings, internal components, and turbocharger. This is especially important for turbocharged, charge air-cooled engines.

#### **NOTE:**

- During engine shut down on vehicles equipped with manual transmissions, it is normal for the diesel engine to resonate heavily for a moment during engine shut off. When the engine is connected to a manual transmission, this resonance causes load gear rattle from the transmission. This is commonly referred to as "shut down rattle." The manufacturer recommends performing engine shut down with the clutch pedal pushed to the floor (clutch disengaged). When engine shut down is performed in this manner the rattle is reduced (not eliminated).
- Refer to the following chart for proper engine shutdown.

| Driving Condition | Load         | Turbocharger Temperature | Idle Time (min.) Before Engine Shutdown |
|-------------------|--------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Stop and Go       | Empty        | Cool                     | Less than One                           |
| Stop and Go       | Medium       | -                        | One                                     |
| Highway Speeds    | Medium       | Warm                     | Two                                     |
| City Traffic      | Maximum GCWR | -                        | Three                                   |
| Highway Speeds    | Maximum GCWR | -                        | Four                                    |
| Uphill Grade      | Maximum GCWR | Hot                      | Five                                    |

## ENGINE BREAK-IN RECOMMENDATIONS — GASOLINE ENGINE

A long break-in period is not required for the engine and drivetrain (transmission and axle) in your vehicle.

Drive moderately during the first 300 miles (500 km). After the initial 60 miles (100 km), speeds up to 50 or 55 mph (80 or 90 km/h) are desirable.

While cruising, brief full-throttle acceleration within the limits of local traffic laws contributes to a good break-in. Wide-open throttle acceleration in low gear can be detrimental and should be avoided.

The engine oil installed in the engine at the factory is a high-quality energy conserving type lubricant. Oil changes should be consistent with anticipated climate conditions under which vehicle operations will occur. For the recommended viscosity and quality grades, refer to “Fluids And Lubricants” in “Technical Specifications”.

### CAUTION!

Never use Non-Detergent Oil or Straight Mineral Oil in the engine or damage may result.

### NOTE:

A new engine may consume some oil during its first few thousand miles (kilometers) of operation. This should be considered a normal part of the break-in and not interpreted as a problem. Please check your oil level with the engine oil indicator often during the break in period. Add oil as required.



## ENGINE BREAK-IN RECOMMENDATIONS — 6.7L DIESEL

The Cummins turbocharged diesel engine does not require a break-in period due to its construction. Normal operation is allowed, providing the following recommendations are followed:

- Warm up the engine before placing it under load.
- Do not operate the engine at idle for prolonged periods.
- Use the appropriate transmission gear to prevent engine lugging.
- Observe vehicle oil pressure and temperature indicators.
- Check the coolant and oil levels frequently.
- Vary throttle position at highway speeds when carrying or towing significant weight.

### NOTE:

Light duty operation such as light trailer towing or no load operation will extend the time before the engine is at full efficiency.

Reduced fuel economy and power may be seen at this time.

For additional vehicle break-in requirements, refer to “Trailer Towing” in “Starting And Operating” of the Owner’s Manual.

Because of the construction of the Cummins turbocharged diesel engine, engine run-in is enhanced by loaded operating conditions which allow the engine parts to achieve final finish and fit during the first 6,000 miles (10 000 km).

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

### WARNING!

- It is dangerous to shift out of PARK or NEUTRAL if the engine speed is higher than idle speed. If your foot is not firmly pressing the brake pedal, the vehicle could accelerate quickly forward or in reverse. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit someone or something. Only shift into gear when the engine is idling normally and your foot is firmly pressing the brake pedal.

### WARNING!

- Unintended movement of a vehicle could injure those in or near the vehicle. As with all vehicles, you should never exit a vehicle while the engine is running. Before exiting a vehicle, always come to a complete stop, then apply the parking brake, shift the transmission into PARK, turn the engine OFF, and remove the key fob. When the ignition is in the LOCK/OFF (key removal) position, (or, with Keyless Enter-N-Go, when the ignition is in the OFF mode) the transmission is locked in PARK, securing the vehicle against unwanted movement.
- When leaving the vehicle, always make sure the ignition is in the OFF mode, remove the key fob from the vehicle, and lock the vehicle.
- Never use the PARK position as a substitute for the parking brake. Always apply the parking brake fully when exiting the vehicle to guard against vehicle movement and possible injury or damage.

## WARNING!

- Your vehicle could move and injure you and others if it is not in PARK. Check by trying to move the gear selector out of PARK with the brake pedal released. Make sure the transmission is in PARK before exiting the vehicle.
- Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the transmission gear selector.
- Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle (or in a location accessible to children), and do not leave the ignition (in a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go) in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

## CAUTION!

Damage to the transmission may occur if the following precautions are not observed:

- Shift into or out of PARK or REVERSE only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
- Do not shift between PARK, REVERSE, NEUTRAL, or DRIVE when the engine is above idle speed.
- Before shifting into any gear, make sure your foot is firmly pressing the brake pedal.

### NOTE:

You must press and hold the brake pedal while shifting out of PARK.

## Key Ignition Park Interlock

This vehicle is equipped with a Key Ignition Park Interlock which requires the transmission to be in PARK before the ignition can be turned to the LOCK/OFF (key removal) position. The key fob can only be removed from

the ignition when the ignition is in the LOCK/OFF position, and the transmission is locked in PARK whenever the ignition is in the LOCK/OFF position.

### NOTE:

If a malfunction occurs, the system will trap the key fob in the ignition to warn you that this safety feature is inoperable. The engine can be started and stopped but the key fob cannot be removed until you obtain service.

## Brake/Transmission Shift Interlock System

This vehicle is equipped with a Brake Transmission Shift Interlock system (BTSI) that holds the transmission gear selector in PARK unless the brakes are applied. To shift the transmission out of PARK, the ignition must be in the ON/RUN mode (engine running or not) and the brake pedal must be pressed.



## Six-Speed Automatic Transmission — If Equipped

Chassis Cab models (with automatic transmission) may use either the AS66RC or AS69RC transmission (which are equipped with a Power Take-Off (PTO) access cover on the side of the transmission case), or the 66RFE transmission (which has no PTO access cover).

The transmission gear position display (located in the instrument cluster) indicates the transmission gear range. The gear selector is mounted on the right side of the steering column. You must press the brake pedal to move the gear selector out of PARK (refer to "Brake/Transmission Shift Interlock System" in this section). To drive, move the gear selector from PARK or NEUTRAL to the DRIVE position. Pull the gear selector toward you when shifting into REVERSE or PARK, or when shifting out of PARK.

The electronically-controlled transmission provides a precise shift schedule. The transmission electronics are self-calibrating; therefore, the first few shifts on a new vehicle may be somewhat abrupt. This is a normal

condition, and precision shifts will develop within a few hundred miles (kilometers).

Only shift from DRIVE to PARK or REVERSE when the accelerator pedal is released and the vehicle is stopped. Be sure to keep your foot on the brake pedal when shifting between these gears.

The transmission gear selector has only PARK, REVERSE, NEUTRAL, and DRIVE shift positions. Manual downshifts can be made using the Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control. Pushing the ERS (-/+) switches (on the gear selector) while in the DRIVE position will select the highest available transmission gear, and will display that gear limit in the instrument cluster as 1, 2, 3, etc. Refer to "Electronic Range Select (ERS) Operation" in this section for further information. Some models will display both the selected gear limit, and the actual current gear, while in ERS mode.

### Transmission Limp Home Mode

Transmission function is monitored electronically for abnormal conditions. If a condition is detected that could result in transmission

damage, Transmission Limp Home Mode is activated. In this mode, the transmission remains in fourth gear (for 66RFE transmission) or third gear (for AS66RC/AS69RC transmission) regardless of which forward gear is selected. If an AS66RC/AS69RC equipped truck enters Limp Home Mode at highway speeds, it will initially engage fifth gear, until the vehicle slows to a speed where third gear can be engaged. PARK, REVERSE, and NEUTRAL will continue to operate. The Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) may be illuminated. Limp Home Mode allows the vehicle to be driven to an authorized dealer for service without damaging the transmission.

In the event of a momentary problem, the transmission can be reset to regain all forward gears by performing the following steps:

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Shift the transmission into PARK.
3. Turn the ignition OFF.
4. Wait approximately 10 seconds.
5. Restart the engine.

6. Shift into the desired gear range. If the problem is no longer detected, the transmission will return to normal operation.

**NOTE:**

Even if the transmission can be reset, we recommend that you visit your authorized dealer at your earliest possible convenience. Your authorized dealer has diagnostic equipment to assess the condition of your transmission.

If the transmission cannot be reset, authorized dealer service is required.

**Electronic Range Select (ERS) Operation**

The Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control allows the driver to limit the highest available gear when the transmission is in DRIVE. For example, if you set the transmission gear limit to 4 (fourth gear), the transmission will not shift above fourth gear, but will shift through the lower gears normally.

You can switch between DRIVE and ERS mode at any vehicle speed. When the gear selector is in the DRIVE position, the transmission will operate automatically, shifting between all available gears. Tapping the ERS (-) switch will activate ERS mode, display the current gear in the instrument cluster, and set that gear as the top available gear. Once in ERS mode, tapping (-) or (+) will change the top available gear.



**Electronic Range Select**

To exit ERS mode, simply push and hold the ERS (+) switch until the gear limit display disappears from the instrument cluster.

**WARNING!**

Do not downshift for additional engine braking on a slippery surface. The drive wheels could lose their grip and the vehicle could skid, causing a collision or personal injury.

**NOTE:**

To select the proper gear position for maximum deceleration (engine braking), simply push and hold the ERS (-) switch. The transmission will shift to the range from which the vehicle can best be slowed down.

**CAUTION!**

When using ERS for engine braking while descending steep grades, be careful not to overspeed the engine. Apply the brakes as needed to prevent engine overspeed.



## FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE OPERATION — IF EQUIPPED

- Four-wheel drive trucks are equipped with either a manually shifted transfer case or an electronically shifted transfer case. Refer to the operating instructions for electronic transfer case, located in this section for further information.
- For further information on the manually shifted transfer case, refer to “Four Wheel Drive Operation” in “Starting And Operating” in your Owner’s Manual.

### Electronically Shifted Transfer Case (Four-Position Switch) — If Equipped

The electronic shift transfer case is operated by the 4WD Control Switch (Transfer Case Switch), which is located on the instrument panel.



**Four-Position/Part Time Transfer Case**

This electronically shifted transfer case provides four mode positions:

- Two-Wheel Drive High Range (2WD)
- Four-Wheel Drive Lock High Range (4WD LOCK)
- Four-Wheel Drive Low Range (4WD LOW)
- Neutral (NEUTRAL)

For additional information on the appropriate use of each transfer case mode position, see the information below:

#### 2WD

Rear Wheel Drive High Range — This range is for normal street and highway driving on dry, hard surfaced roads.

#### 4WD LOCK

Four-Wheel Drive Lock High Range — This range maximizes torque to the front drive-shaft, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This range provides additional traction for loose, slippery road surfaces only.

#### 4WD LOW

Four-Wheel Drive Low Range — This range provides low speed four-wheel drive. It maximizes torque to the front driveshaft, forcing

the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This range provides additional traction and maximum pulling power for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

### NEUTRAL (N)

Neutral — This range disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain. To be used for flat towing behind another vehicle. Refer to “Recreational Towing” in this section for further information.

### WARNING!

You or others could be injured or killed if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the NEUTRAL position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case NEUTRAL position disengages both the front and rear drive shafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to roll, even if the transmission is in PARK. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

This electronically shifted transfer case is designed to be driven in the two-wheel drive position (2WD) for normal street and highway conditions on dry, hard surfaced roads.

When additional traction is required, the transfer case 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions can be used to maximize torque to the front driveshaft, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This is accomplished by rotating the 4WD Control Switch to the desired position.

Refer to “Shifting Procedure” in the “Starting And Operating” section of your Owner’s Manual for specific shifting instructions.

## SPEED CONTROL

When engaged, the Speed Control takes over accelerator operations at speeds greater than 25 mph (40 km/h).

The Speed Control buttons are located on the right side of the steering wheel.



### Speed Control Buttons

- 1 — Push CANCEL
- 2 — Push ON/OFF
- 3 — Push RES (+) /Accel
- 4 — Push SET (-) /Decel

### NOTE:

In order to ensure proper operation, the Speed Control System has been designed to shut down if multiple speed control functions are operated at the same time. If this occurs, the Speed Control System can be reactivated

by pushing the Speed Control ON/OFF button and resetting the desired vehicle set speed.

## To Activate

Push the ON/OFF button. The Cruise Indicator Light in the instrument cluster display will illuminate. To turn the system off, push the ON/OFF button a second time. The Cruise Indicator Light will turn off. The system should be turned off when not in use.

### WARNING!

Leaving the Speed Control system on when not in use is dangerous. You could accidentally set the system or cause it to go faster than you want. You could lose control and have an accident. Always leave the system off when you are not using it.

## To Set A Desired Speed

Turn the Speed Control on. When the vehicle has reached the desired speed, push the SET (-) button and release. Release the accelerator and the vehicle will operate at the selected speed.

### NOTE:

The vehicle should be traveling at a steady speed and on level ground before pushing the SET (-) button.

## To Vary The Speed Setting

### To Increase Speed

When the Speed Control is set, you can increase speed by pushing the RES (+) button.

The driver's preferred units can be selected through the instrument panel settings if equipped. Refer to "Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel" in the Owner's Manual for more information. The speed decrement shown is dependant on the chosen speed unit of U.S. (mph) or Metric (km/h):

U.S. Speed (mph)

- Pushing the RES (+) button once will result in a 1 mph increase in set speed. Each subsequent tap of the button results in an increase of 1 mph.
- If the button is continually pushed, the set speed will continue to increase until the button is released, then the new set speed will be established.

Metric Speed (km/h)

- Pushing the RES (+) button once will result in a 1 km/h increase in set speed. Each subsequent tap of the button results in an increase of 1 km/h.
- If the button is continually pushed, the set speed will continue to increase until the button is released, then the new set speed will be established.

### To Decrease Speed

When the Speed Control is set, you can decrease speed by pushing the SET (-) button.

The driver's preferred units can be selected through the instrument panel settings if equipped. Refer to "Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel" in the Owner's Manual for more information. The speed increment shown is dependent on the selected speed unit of U.S. (mph) or Metric (km/h):

U.S. Speed (mph)

- Pushing the SET (-) button once will result in a 1 mph decrease in set speed. Each subsequent tap of the button results in a decrease of 1 mph.

- If the button is continually pushed, the set speed will continue to decrease until the button is released, then the new set speed will be established.

Metric Speed (km/h)

- Pushing the SET (-) button once will result in a 1 km/h decrease in set speed. Each subsequent tap of the button results in a decrease of 1 km/h.
- If the button is continually pushed, the set speed will continue to decrease until the button is released, then the new set speed will be established.

## To Accelerate For Passing

Press the accelerator as you would normally. When the pedal is released, the vehicle will return to the set speed.

## Using Speed Control On Hills

The transmission may downshift on hills to maintain the vehicle set speed.

### NOTE:

The Speed Control system maintains speed up and down hills. A slight speed change on moderate hills is normal.

On steep hills, a greater speed loss or gain may occur so it may be preferable to drive without Speed Control.

### WARNING!

Speed Control can be dangerous where the system cannot maintain a constant speed. Your vehicle could go too fast for the conditions, and you could lose control and have an accident. Do not use Speed Control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, icy, snow-covered or slippery.

## To Resume Speed

To resume a previously set speed, push the RES (+) button and release. Resume can be used at any speed above 20 mph (32 km/h).

## To Deactivate

A soft tap on the brake pedal, pushing the CANCEL button, or normal brake pressure while slowing the vehicle will deactivate the Speed Control without erasing the set speed from memory.

Pushing the ON/OFF button, or returning the ignition to OFF, erases the set speed from memory.

## PARKSENSE FRONT AND REAR PARK ASSIST — IF EQUIPPED

The ParkSense Park Assist system provides visual and audible indications of the distance between the rear and/or front fascia and a detected obstacle when backing up or moving forward, e.g. during a parking maneuver. Refer to “ParkSense System Usage Precautions” in the Owner’s Manual for limitations of this system and recommendations.

ParkSense will retain the last system state (enabled or disabled) from the last ignition cycle when the ignition is changed to the ON/RUN position.

ParkSense can be active only when the gear selector is in REVERSE or DRIVE. If ParkSense is enabled at one of these gear selector positions, the system will remain active until the vehicle speed is increased to approximately 7 mph (11 km/h) or above. A warning will appear in the instrument cluster



display indicating the vehicle is above ParkSense operating speed. The system will become active again if the vehicle speed is decreased to speeds less than approximately 6 mph (9 km/h).

### **ParkSense Sensors**

For the 3500, 4500 and 5500 Chassis Cab vehicles, the rear ParkSense sensors are shipped loose. Please refer to the Ram Body Builders Guide for more information.

### **Cleaning The ParkSense System**

Clean the ParkSense sensors with water, car wash soap and a soft cloth. Do not use rough or hard cloths. Do not scratch or poke the sensors. Otherwise, you could damage the sensors.

## **PARKVIEW REAR BACK UP CAMERA — IF EQUIPPED**

Your vehicle may be equipped with the ParkView Rear Back Up Camera that allows you to see a image of the rear surroundings of your vehicle whenever the gear selector is put into REVERSE or whenever it is initiated

through the "Backup Camera" button in the "Controls" menu. Whenever the gear selector is put into REVERSE, the image will be displayed in the rearview mirror display (if equipped) or Uconnect screen (if equipped) along with a caution note to "check entire surroundings" across the top of the screen. After five seconds this note will disappear.

#### **NOTE:**

For the 3500, 4500 and 5500 Chassis Cab vehicles, the Rear Backup Camera is shipped loose and not installed. Please refer to the Ram Body Builders Guide for more information.

The ParkView Camera is located to the left of the tailgate handle.

When the vehicle is shifted out of REVERSE (with Camera delay turned off), the rear Camera mode is exited and the navigation or audio screen appears again.

When the vehicle is shifted out of REVERSE (with Camera delay turned on), the rear Camera image will be displayed for up to 10 seconds after shifting out of REVERSE unless

the forward vehicle speed exceeds 8 mph (13 km/h), the transmission is shifted into PARK or the ignition is switched to the OFF position.

Whenever the Rear View Camera image is activated through the "Backup Camera" button in the "Controls" menu, a display timer for the image is initiated. The image will continue to be displayed until the display timer exceeds 10 seconds and the vehicle speed is above 8 mph (13 km/h) or the touchscreen button "X" to disable display of the Rear View Camera image is pressed.

#### **NOTE:**

If the vehicle speed remains below 8 mph (13 km/h), the Rear View Camera image will be displayed continuously until deactivated via the touchscreen button "X".

If equipped with a Cargo Camera, a touchscreen button  to indicate the current active Camera image being displayed is made available whenever the Rear View Camera image is displayed.

If equipped with a Cargo Camera, a touchscreen button  to switch the display to Cargo Camera image is made available whenever the Rear View Camera image is displayed.

A touchscreen button "X" to disable display of the camera image is made available when the vehicle is not in REVERSE gear.

When enabled, active guide lines are overlaid on the image to illustrate the width of the vehicle and its projected backup path based on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines will show separate zones that will help indicate the distance to the rear of the vehicle.

#### NOTE:

For further information about how to access and change the programmable features of the ParkView Rear Backup Camera, refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Multimedia" in the Owner's Manual for further information.

#### WARNING!

Drivers must be careful when backing up even when using the ParkView Rear Back Up Camera. Always check carefully behind your vehicle, and be sure to check for pedestrians, animals, other vehicles, obstructions, or blind spots before backing up. You are responsible for the safety of your surroundings and must continue to pay attention while backing up. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.

#### CAUTION!

- To avoid vehicle damage, ParkView should only be used as a parking aid. The ParkView camera is unable to view every obstacle or object in your drive path.
- To avoid vehicle damage, the vehicle must be driven slowly when using ParkView to be able to stop in time when an obstacle is seen. It is recommended

#### CAUTION!

that the driver look frequently over his/her shoulder when using ParkView.

#### NOTE:

If snow, ice, mud, or any foreign substance builds up on the camera lens, clean the lens, rinse with water, and dry with a soft cloth. Do not cover the lens.

#### Turning Rear View Camera Image On:

1. Press the "Controls" button located on the bottom of the Uconnect display.
2. Press the "Backup Camera" button  to turn the Rear View Camera system on.

#### NOTE:

Once initiated by the "Backup Camera" button, the Rear View Camera image may be deactivated by pressing the "X" button on the touchscreen. On deactivation, the previous selected screen will appear.



## REFUELING THE VEHICLE — GAS

**CAUTION!**

- Damage to the fuel system or emissions control system could result from using an improper fuel tank filler tube cap (fuel filler cap). A poorly fitting cap could let impurities into the fuel system. Also, a poorly-fitted aftermarket cap can cause the MIL (Malfunction Indicator Light) to illuminate due to fuel vapors escaping from the system.
- A poorly fitting fuel filler cap may cause the MIL to turn on.
- To avoid fuel spillage and overfilling, do not “top off” the fuel tank after filling.

**NOTE:**

When the fuel nozzle “clicks” or shuts off the fuel tank is full.

**WARNING!**

- Never have any smoking materials lit in or near the vehicle when the gas cap is removed or the tank is being filled.

**WARNING!**

- Never add fuel to the vehicle when the engine is running. This is in violation of most state and federal fire regulations and may cause the MIL to turn on.

**NOTE:**

Tighten the gas cap ¼ turn until you hear one click. This is an indication that the cap is properly tightened.

If the gas cap is not tightened properly, the Malfunction Indicator Light will come on. Be sure the gas cap is tightened every time the vehicle is refueled.

**WARNING!**

A fire may result if gasoline is pumped into a portable container that is inside of a vehicle. You could be burned. Always place gas containers on the ground while filling.

## Materials Added To Fuel

Designated TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline contains a higher level of detergents to further aide in minimizing engine and fuel system deposits. When available, the usage of TOP TIER Detergent gasoline is recommended. Visit [www.toptiergas.com](http://www.toptiergas.com) for a list of TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline Retailers.

Indiscriminate use of fuel system cleaning agents should be avoided. Many of these materials intended for gum and varnish removal may contain active solvents or similar ingredients. These can harm fuel system gasket and diaphragm materials.



## REFUELING THE VEHICLE — DIESEL CHASSIS CAB MODELS

### CAUTION!

To avoid fuel spillage and overfilling, do not “top off” the fuel tank after filling.

### NOTE:

- When the fuel nozzle “clicks” or shuts off, the fuel tank is full.
- Tighten the fuel filler cap until you hear a “clicking” sound. This is an indication that the fuel filler cap is properly tightened.
- Make sure that the fuel filler cap is tightened each time the vehicle is refueled.

### WARNING!

A fire may result if gasoline is pumped into a portable container that is inside of a vehicle. You could be burned. Always place gas containers on the ground while filling.

## Diesel Exhaust Fluid

Your vehicle is equipped with a Selective Catalytic Reduction system to meet the very stringent diesel emissions standards required by the Environmental Protection Agency.

The purpose of the SCR system is to reduce levels of NOx (oxides of nitrogen emitted from engines) that are harmful to our health and the environment to a near-zero level. A small quantity of Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) is injected into the exhaust upstream of a catalyst where, when vaporized, it converts smog-forming nitrogen oxides (NOx) into harmless nitrogen (N<sub>2</sub>) and water vapor (H<sub>2</sub>O), two natural components of the air we breathe. You can operate with the comfort that your vehicle is contributing to a cleaner, healthier world environment for this and generations to come.

### System Overview

This vehicle is equipped with a Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) injection system and a Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) catalyst to meet the emission requirements.

The DEF injection system consists of the following components:

- DEF tank
- DEF pump
- DEF injector
- Electronically-heated DEF lines
- DEF control module
- NOx sensors
- Temperature sensors
- SCR catalyst
- UQS Sensor

Refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” for system messages and warnings.

### NOTE:

- Your vehicle is equipped with a DEF injection system. You may occasionally hear an audible clicking noise. This is normal operation.
- The DEF pump will run for a period of time after engine shutdown to purge the DEF system. This is normal operation.



## Diesel Exhaust Fluid Storage

Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) is considered a very stable product with a long shelf life. If DEF is kept in temperatures between 10° and 90°F (-12° and 32°C), it will last a minimum of one year.

DEF is subject to freezing at the lowest temperatures. For example, DEF may freeze at temperatures at or below 12° F (-11° C). The system has been designed to operate in this environment.

### NOTE:

When working with DEF, it is important to know that:

- Any containers or parts that come into contact with DEF must be DEF compatible (plastic or stainless steel). Copper, brass, aluminum, iron or non-stainless steel should be avoided as they are subject to corrosion by DEF.
- If DEF is spilled, it should be wiped up completely.

## Adding Diesel Exhaust Fluid

The DEF gauge (located on the instrument cluster) will display the level of DEF remaining in the tank. Refer to “Instrument Cluster” and “Instrument Cluster Descriptions” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

### NOTE:

- Driving conditions (altitude, vehicle speed, load, etc.) will effect the amount of DEF that is used in your vehicle.
- Another factor is that outside temperature can affect DEF consumption. In cold conditions, 12° F (-11° C) and below, the DEF gauge needle can stay on a fixed position and may not move for extended periods of time. This is a normal function of the system.
- There is an electric heater inside the DEF tank that automatically works when necessary. And if the DEF supply does freeze, the truck will operate normally until it thaws.

## DEF Fill Procedure

### NOTE:

Refer to “Fluids And Lubricants” in “Technical Specifications” for the correct fluid type.

1. Remove cap from DEF tank (located on drivers side of the vehicle or in fuel door).



**Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Filler Location**

2. Insert DEF fill adapter/nozzle into DEF tank filler neck.

## NOTE:

- The DEF gauge may take up to five seconds to update after adding a gallon or more of Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) to the DEF tank. If you have a fault related to the DEF system, the gauge may not update to the new level. See your authorized dealer for service.
- The DEF gauge may also not immediately update after a refill if the temperature of the DEF fluid is below 12°F (-11°C). The DEF line heater will possibly warm up the DEF fluid and allow the gauge to update after a period of run time. Under very cold conditions, it is possible that the gauge may not reflect the new fill level for several drives.

## CAUTION!

- To avoid DEF spillage, and possible damage to the DEF tank from overfilling, do not “top off” the DEF tank after filling.

## CAUTION!

- DO NOT OVERFILL. DEF will freeze below 12°F (-11°C). The DEF system is designed to work in temperatures below the DEF freezing point, however, if the tank is overfilled and freezes, the system could be damaged.
- When DEF is spilled, clean the area immediately with water and use an absorbent material to soak up the spills on the ground.
- Do not attempt to start your engine if DEF is accidentally added to the diesel fuel tank as it can result in severe damage to your engine, including but not limited to failure of the fuel pump and injectors.
- Never add anything other than DEF to the tank – especially any form of hydrocarbon such as diesel fuel, fuel system additives, gasoline, or any other petroleum-based product. Even a very small amount of these, less than 100 parts per million or less than 1 oz. per 78 gallons (295 liters) will contaminate the entire DEF system and will

## CAUTION!

require replacement. If owners use a container, funnel or nozzle when refilling the tank, it should either be new or one that is has only been used for adding DEF. Mopar provides an attachable nozzle with its DEF for this purpose.

3. Stop filling the DEF tank immediately when any of the following happen: DEF stops flowing from the fill bottle into the DEF tank, DEF splashes out the filler neck, or a DEF pump nozzle automatically shuts off.
4. Reinstall cap onto DEF tank.

### Filling The Def Tank In Cold Climates

Since DEF will begin to freeze at 12°F (-11°C), your vehicle is equipped with an automatic DEF heating system. This allows the DEF injection system to operate properly at temperatures below 12°F (-11°C). If your vehicle is not in operation for an extended period of time with temperatures below 12°F (-11°C), the DEF in the tank may freeze. If the tank is overfilled and freezes, it could be damaged. Therefore, do not overfill the DEF tank.



Extra care should be taken when filling with portable containers to avoid overfilling. Note the level of the DEF gauge in your instrument cluster. You may safely add a maximum of 2 gallons (7.5 Liters) of DEF from portable containers when your DEF gauge is reading ½ full.

## TRAILER TOWING

### Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings)

#### NOTE:

For trailer towing information (maximum trailer weight ratings) refer to the following website addresses:

- [ramtrucks.com/en/towing\\_guide/](http://ramtrucks.com/en/towing_guide/)
- [ramtruck.ca](http://ramtruck.ca) (Canada)
- [rambodybuilder.com](http://rambodybuilder.com)

### Towing Requirements

To promote proper break-in of your new vehicle drivetrain components, the following guidelines are recommended.

#### CAUTION!

- Do not tow a trailer at all during the first 500 miles (805 km) the new vehicle is driven. The engine, axle or other parts could be damaged.
- Then, during the first 500 miles (805 km) that a trailer is towed, do not drive over 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not make starts at full throttle. This helps the engine and other parts of the vehicle wear in at the heavier loads.

Perform the maintenance listed in the “Scheduled Servicing”. Refer to “Scheduled Servicing” in “Servicing And Maintenance” for the proper maintenance intervals. When towing a trailer, never exceed the GAWR or GCWR ratings.

#### WARNING!

Improper towing can lead to a collision. Follow these guidelines to make your trailer towing as safe as possible:

- Make certain that the load is secured in the trailer and will not shift during

#### WARNING!

- travel. When trailering cargo that is not fully secured, dynamic load shifts can occur that may be difficult for the driver to control. You could lose control of your vehicle and have a collision.
- When hauling cargo or towing a trailer, do not overload your vehicle or trailer. Overloading can cause a loss of control, poor performance or damage to brakes, axle, engine, transmission, steering, suspension, chassis structure or tires.
  - Safety chains must always be used between your vehicle and trailer. Always connect the chains to the hook retainers of the vehicle hitch. Cross the chains under the trailer tongue and allow enough slack for turning corners.
  - Vehicles with trailers should not be parked on a grade. When parking, apply the parking brake on the tow vehicle. Put the tow vehicle transmission in PARK. For four-wheel drive vehicles, make sure the transfer case is not in NEUTRAL. Always, block or “chock” the trailer wheels.

## WARNING!

- GCWR must not be exceeded.
- **Total weight must be distributed between the tow vehicle and the trailer such that the following four ratings are not exceeded:**
  1. GVWR
  2. GTW
  3. GAWR
  4. Tongue weight rating for the trailer hitch utilized.

## Towing Requirements — Trailer Brakes

- Do **not** interconnect the hydraulic brake system or vacuum system of your vehicle with that of the trailer. This could cause inadequate braking and possible personal injury.
- An electronically actuated trailer brake controller is required when towing a trailer with electronically actuated brakes. When towing a trailer equipped with a hydraulic surge actuated brake system, an electronic brake controller is not required.

- Trailer brakes are recommended for trailers over 1,000 lbs (453 kg) and required for trailers in excess of 2,000 lbs (907 kg).

## WARNING!

- Do not connect trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic brake lines. It can overload your brake system and cause it to fail. You might not have brakes when you need them and could have a collision.
- Towing any trailer will increase your stopping distance. When towing you should allow for additional space between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you. Failure to do so could result in a collision.

## CAUTION!

If the trailer weighs more than 1,000 lbs (453 kg) loaded, it should have its own brakes and they should be of adequate capacity. Failure to do this could lead to accelerated brake lining wear, higher brake pedal effort, and longer stopping distances.

## Integrated Trailer Brake Module — If Equipped

Your vehicle may have an Integrated Trailer Brake Module (ITBM) for Electric and Electric Over Hydraulic (EOH) trailer brakes.

### NOTE:

This module has been designed and verified with electric trailer brakes and new electric over hydraulic systems. Some previous EOH systems may not be compatible with ITBM.



### Adjustment Buttons

- 1 — Decrease (-)
- 2 — Increase (+)



The user interface consists of the following:

### **Manual Brake Control Lever**

Slide the manual brake control lever to the left to activate power to the trailer's electric brakes independent of the tow vehicle's brakes. If the manual brake control lever is activated while the brake is also applied, the greater of the two inputs determines the power sent to the trailer brakes.

The trailer and the vehicle's brake lamps will come on when either vehicle braking or manual trailer brakes are applied.

### **Trailer Brake Status Indicator Light**

This light indicates the trailer electrical connection status.

If no electrical connection is detected after the ignition is turned on, pushing the GAIN adjustment button or sliding the manual brake control lever will display the GAIN setting for 10 seconds and the "Trailer Brake Status Indicator Light" will not be displayed.

If a fault is detected in the trailer wiring or the Integrated Trailer Brake Module (ITBM), the

"Trailer Brake Status Indicator Light" will flash.

### **GAIN Adjustment Buttons (+/-)**

Pushing these buttons will adjust the brake control power output to the trailer brakes in 0.5 increments. The GAIN setting can be increased to a maximum of 10 or decreased to a minimum of 0 (no trailer braking).

### **GAIN**

The GAIN setting is used to set the trailer brake control for the specific towing condition and should be changed as towing conditions change. Changes to towing conditions include trailer load, vehicle load, road conditions and weather.

### **Adjusting GAIN**

#### **NOTE:**

This should only be performed in a traffic free environment at speeds of approximately 20–25 mph (30–40 km/h).

1. Make sure the trailer brakes are in good working condition, functioning normally and properly adjusted. See your trailer dealer if necessary.

2. Hook up the trailer and make the electrical connections according to the trailer manufacturer's instructions.
3. When a trailer with electric/EOH brakes is plugged in, the trailer connected message should appear in the instrument cluster display (if the connection is not recognized by the ITBM, braking functions will not be available), the GAIN setting will illuminate and the correct type of trailer must be selected from the instrument cluster display options.
4. Push the UP or DOWN button on the steering wheel until "TRAILER TOW" appears on the screen.
5. Push the RIGHT arrow on the steering wheel to enter "TRAILER TOW".
6. Push the UP or DOWN buttons until the Trailer Brake Type appears on the screen.
7. Push the RIGHT arrow and then push the UP or DOWN buttons until the proper Trailer Brake Type appears on the screen.

8. In a traffic-free environment, tow the trailer on a dry, level surface at a speed of 20–25 mph (30–40 km/h) and squeeze the manual brake control lever completely.

9. If the trailer wheels lockup (indicated by squealing tires), reduce the GAIN setting; if the trailer wheels turn freely, increase the GAIN setting.

Repeat steps 8 and 9 until the GAIN setting is at a point just below trailer wheel lockup. If towing a heavier trailer, trailer wheel lockup may not be attainable even with the maximum GAIN setting of 10.

|                        | Light Electric          | Heavy Electric          | Light EOH                              | Heavy EOH                              |
|------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Type of Trailer Brakes | Electric Trailer Brakes | Electric Trailer Brakes | Electric over Hydraulic Trailer Brakes | Electric over Hydraulic Trailer Brakes |
| Load                   | *Under 10,000 lbs       | *Above 10,000 lbs       | *Under 10,000 lbs                      | *Above 10,000 lbs                      |

\* The suggested selection depends and may change depending on the customer preferences for braking performance. Condition of the trailer brakes, driving and road state may also affect the selection.

### Display Messages

The trailer brake control interacts with the instrument cluster display. Display messages, along with a single chime, will be displayed when a malfunction is determined in the trailer connection, trailer brake control, or on the trailer. Refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

### WARNING!

Connecting a trailer that is not compatible with the ITBM system may result in reduced or complete loss of trailer braking. There may be a increase in stopping distance or trailer instability which could result in personal injury.

### CAUTION!

Connecting a trailer that is not compatible with the ITBM system may result in reduced or complete loss of trailer braking. There may be a increase in stopping distance or trailer instability which could re-

### CAUTION!

sult in damage to your vehicle, trailer, or other property.

### NOTE:

- An aftermarket controller may be available for use with trailers with air or electric-over-hydraulic trailer brake systems. To determine the type of brakes on your trailer and the availability of controllers, check with your trailer manufacturer or dealer.
- Removal of the ITBM will cause errors and it may cause damage to the electrical system and electronic modules of the vehicle. See your authorized dealer if an aftermarket module is to be installed.



## RECREATIONAL TOWING (BEHIND MOTORHOME, ETC.)

### Towing This Vehicle Behind Another Vehicle

| Towing Condition | Wheels OFF The Ground | Two-Wheel Drive Models | Four-Wheel Drive Models                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Flat Tow         | NONE                  | <b>NOT ALLOWED</b>     | <b>See Instructions</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Automatic transmission in PARK</li> <li>• Manual transmission in gear (NOT in NEUTRAL)</li> <li>• Transfer case in NEUTRAL (N)</li> <li>• Tow in forward direction</li> </ul> |
| Dolly Tow        | Front                 | <b>NOT ALLOWED</b>     | <b>NOT ALLOWED</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|                  | Rear                  | OK                     | <b>NOT ALLOWED</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| On Trailer       | ALL                   | OK                     | OK                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

#### NOTE:

- When towing your vehicle, always follow applicable state and provincial laws. Contact state and provincial Highway Safety offices for additional details.

### Recreational Towing — Two-Wheel Drive Models

**DO NOT flat tow this vehicle. Damage to the drivetrain will result.**

Recreational towing (for two-wheel drive models) is allowed **ONLY** if the rear wheels are **OFF** the ground. This may be accomplished using a tow dolly or vehicle trailer. If using a tow dolly, follow this procedure:

1. Properly secure the dolly to the tow vehicle, following the dolly manufacturer's instructions.
2. Drive the rear wheels onto the tow dolly.
3. Firmly apply the parking brake. Place automatic transmission in PARK, manual transmission in gear (not in NEUTRAL).
4. Properly secure the rear wheels to the dolly, following the dolly manufacturer's instructions.

5. Turn the ignition OFF and remove the key fob.
6. Install a suitable clamping device, designed for towing, to secure the front wheels in the straight position.

### CAUTION!

- Towing with the rear wheels on the ground will cause severe transmission damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Do not disconnect the driveshaft because fluid may leak from the transmission, causing damage to internal parts.

## Recreational Towing — Four-Wheel Drive Models

### NOTE:

Both the manual shift and electronic shift transfer cases must be shifted into NEUTRAL (N) for recreational towing. Automatic transmissions must be shifted into PARK for recreational towing. Manual transmissions must be placed in gear (NOT in NEUTRAL) for

recreational towing. Refer to the following for the proper transfer case NEUTRAL (N) shifting procedure for your vehicle.

### CAUTION!

- DO NOT dolly tow any 4WD vehicle. Towing with only one set of wheels on the ground (front or rear) will cause severe transmission and/or transfer case damage. Tow with all four wheels either ON the ground, or OFF the ground (using a vehicle trailer).
- Tow only in the forward direction. Towing this vehicle backwards can cause severe damage to the transfer case.
- Before recreational towing, the transfer case must be in NEUTRAL. To be certain the transfer case is fully in NEUTRAL, perform the procedure outlined under “Shifting Into NEUTRAL”. Internal transmission damage will result, if the transfer case is not in NEUTRAL during towing.
- Automatic transmissions must be placed in PARK, and manual transmis-

### CAUTION!

- sions must be placed in gear (not in Neutral) for recreational towing.
- Towing this vehicle in violation of the above requirements can cause severe transmission and/or transfer case damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
  - Do not disconnect the rear driveshaft because fluid will leak from the transfer case, causing damage to internal parts.
  - Do not use a bumper-mounted clamp-on tow bar on your vehicle. The bumper face bar will be damaged.

### Shifting Into NEUTRAL (N)

Use the following procedure to prepare your vehicle for recreational towing.

### WARNING!

You or others could be injured or killed if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the NEUTRAL (N) position without first fully engaging the parking



**WARNING!**

brake. The transfer case NEUTRAL (N) position disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain, and will allow the vehicle to roll, even if the automatic transmission is in PARK (or manual transmission is in gear). The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

**CAUTION!**

It is necessary to follow these steps to be certain that the transfer case is fully in NEUTRAL (N) before recreational towing to prevent damage to internal parts.

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop on level ground, with the engine running. Firmly apply the parking brake.
2. Shift the transmission to NEUTRAL.
3. Press and hold the brake pedal.
4. Depress the clutch pedal on a manual transmission.
5. Shift the transfer case into NEUTRAL:
  - With manual shift transfer case, shift the transfer case lever into NEUTRAL (N).
  - With electronic shift transfer case, push and hold the transfer case NEUTRAL (N) button. Some models have a small, recessed "N" button (at the center of the transfer case switches) that must be pressed using a ballpoint pen or similar object. Other models have a rectangular NEUTRAL switch, below the rotary transfer case control knob. The NEUTRAL (N) indicator light will blink while the shift is in progress. The light will stop blinking (stay on solid) when the shift to NEUTRAL (N) is complete. After the shift is completed and the NEUTRAL (N) light stays on, release the NEUTRAL (N) button.
6. Release the parking brake.
7. Shift the transmission into REVERSE.
8. Release the brake pedal (and clutch pedal on manual transmissions) for five seconds and ensure that there is no vehicle movement.
9. Repeat steps seven and eight with automatic transmission in DRIVE or manual transmission in first gear.
10. Shift the transmission to NEUTRAL. Firmly apply the parking brake. Turn OFF the engine. For vehicles with Keyless Enter-N-Go, push and hold the ENGINE START/STOP button until the engine shuts off.
11. Shift the transmission into PARK or place manual transmission in gear (NOT in NEUTRAL).
12. Place the ignition in the OFF mode, and remove the key fob.
13. Attach the vehicle to the tow vehicle using a suitable tow bar.
14. Release the parking brake.

**NOTE:**

With electronic shift transfer case:

- Steps 2 through 4 are requirements that must be met before pushing the NEUTRAL (N) button, and must continue to be met until the shift has been completed. If any of these requirements are not met before pushing the NEUTRAL (N) button or are no longer met during the shift, the NEUTRAL (N) indicator light will flash continuously until all requirements are met or until the NEUTRAL (N) button is released.
- The ignition must be in the ON/RUN mode for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the ignition is not in the ON/RUN mode, the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.
- A flashing NEUTRAL (N) position indicator light indicates that shift requirements have not been met.

**Shifting Out Of NEUTRAL (N)**

Use the following procedure to prepare your vehicle for normal usage:

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop, leaving it connected to the tow vehicle.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake.
3. Turn the ignition to the ON/RUN mode, but do not start the engine.
4. Press and hold the brake pedal.
5. Shift the transmission into NEUTRAL.
  - With manual shift transfer case, shift the transfer case lever to the desired position.
  - With electronic shift transfer case with rotary selector switch, push and hold the transfer case NEUTRAL (N) button until the NEUTRAL (N) indicator light turns off, release the NEUTRAL (N) button. After the NEUTRAL (N) button has been released, the transfer case will shift to the position indicated by the selector switch.

- With electronic shift transfer case with push-button selector switch, push and hold the switch for the desired transfer case position, until the NEUTRAL (N) indicator light turns off and the desired position indicator light turns on.

**NOTE:**

When shifting out of transfer case NEUTRAL (N), the engine should remain OFF to avoid gear clash.

6. Shift automatic transmission into PARK.
7. Release the brake pedal (and clutch pedal on a manual transmission).
8. Disconnect vehicle from the tow vehicle.
9. Start the engine.
10. Press and hold the brake pedal.
11. Release the parking brake.
12. Shift the transmission into gear, release the brake pedal (and clutch pedal on manual transmissions), and check that the vehicle operates normally.



**NOTE:**

With electronic shift transfer case:

- Steps 3 and 4 are requirements that must be met before pushing the button to shift out of NEUTRAL (N), and must continue to be met until the shift has been completed. If any of these requirements are not met before pushing the button or are no longer met during the shift, the NEUTRAL (N) indicator light will flash continuously until all requirements are met or until the button is released.
- The ignition must be in the ON/RUN mode for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the ignition is not in the ON/RUN mode, the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.
- A flashing NEUTRAL (N) position indicator light indicates that shift requirements have not been met.

# IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

|                                                        |            |
|--------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS</b> . . . . .               | <b>150</b> |
| <b>BULB REPLACEMENT</b> . . . . .                      | <b>150</b> |
| Replacement Bulbs . . . . .                            | 150        |
| <b>FUSES</b> . . . . .                                 | <b>151</b> |
| Power Distribution Center . . . . .                    | 151        |
| <b>JACKING AND TIRE CHANGING</b> . . . . .             | <b>156</b> |
| 4500/5500 Models . . . . .                             | 156        |
| Preparations For Jacking . . . . .                     | 156        |
| Jacking Instructions 4500 And<br>5500 Series . . . . . | 157        |

|                                                      |            |
|------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| To Stow The Flat Or Spare —<br>If Equipped . . . . . | 159        |
| Hub Caps/Wheel Covers —<br>If Equipped . . . . .     | 159        |
| <b>JUMP STARTING</b> . . . . .                       | <b>160</b> |
| Preparations For Jump Start. . . . .                 | 160        |
| Jump Starting Procedure. . . . .                     | 161        |
| <b>IF YOUR ENGINE OVERHEATS</b> . . . . .            | <b>163</b> |
| <b>GEAR SELECTOR OVERRIDE</b> . . . . .              | <b>163</b> |

|                                                               |            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>FREEING A STUCK VEHICLE</b> . . . . .                      | <b>164</b> |
| <b>TOWING A DISABLED VEHICLE</b> . . . . .                    | <b>165</b> |
| Two-Wheel Drive Models . . . . .                              | 166        |
| Four-Wheel Drive Models. . . . .                              | 166        |
| Emergency Tow Hooks — If Equipped. .                          | 166        |
| <b>ENHANCED ACCIDENT RESPONSE<br/>SYSTEM (EARS)</b> . . . . . | <b>167</b> |
| <b>EVENT DATA RECORDER (EDR)</b> . . . . .                    | <b>167</b> |



## HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS

The Hazard Warning flasher switch is located on the upper switch bank just below the radio.

Push the switch to turn on the Hazard Warning flasher. When the switch is activated, all directional turn signals will flash on and off to warn oncoming traffic of an emergency. Push the switch a second time to turn off the Hazard Warning flashers.

This is an emergency warning system and it should not be used when the vehicle is in motion. Use it when your vehicle is disabled and it is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

When you must leave the vehicle to seek assistance, the Hazard Warning flashers will continue to operate even though the ignition is placed in the OFF position.

### NOTE:

With extended use the Hazard Warning flashers may wear down your battery.

## BULB REPLACEMENT

### Replacement Bulbs

#### LIGHT BULBS — Interior

|                                                                                | Bulb Number |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Overhead Console Lamps                                                         | TS 212-2    |
| Dome Lamp                                                                      | 7679        |
| For lighted switches, see your authorized dealer for replacement instructions. |             |

#### LIGHT BULBS — Exterior

|                                        | Bulb Number |
|----------------------------------------|-------------|
| Quad Headlamp – Low Beam               | H11         |
| Quad Headlamp – High Beam              | 9005        |
| Quad Headlamp – Front Turn Signal Lamp | 3157NA      |

|                                                    | Bulb Number                             |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Premium Headlamp – Low Beam                        | HIR2                                    |
| Premium Headlamp – High Beam                       | 9005                                    |
| Premium Headlamp – Front Turn Signal Lamp          | LED (See authorized dealer for service) |
| Horizontal Fog Lamp                                | 9145                                    |
| Vertical Fog Lamp                                  | 9006                                    |
| Cab Roof Marker Lamps                              | 194NA                                   |
| Center High Mounted Stop Lamp                      | 921                                     |
| Rear Cargo Lamp                                    | 921                                     |
| Box Off Tail Lamps – Stop/Turn/Tail/ License Plate | 1157                                    |
| Box Off Tail Lamps – Back Up                       | 1156                                    |

## FUSES

### WARNING!

- When replacing a blown fuse, always use an appropriate replacement fuse with the same amp rating as the original fuse. Never replace a fuse with another fuse of higher amp rating. Never replace a blown fuse with metal wires or any other material. Do not place a fuse inside a circuit breaker cavity or vice versa. Failure to use proper fuses may result in serious personal injury, fire and/or property damage.

### WARNING!

- Before replacing a fuse, make sure that the ignition is off and that all the other services are switched off and/or disengaged.
- If the replaced fuse blows again, contact an authorized dealer.
- If a general protection fuse for safety systems (air bag system, braking system), power unit systems (engine system, transmission system) or steering system blows, contact an authorized dealer.

| Cavity | Cartridge Fuse                                           | Micro Fuse | Description                                       |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------|------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| F01    | 80 Amp Black                                             | –          | Rad Fan Control Module – If Equipped              |
| F03    | 60 Amp Yellow                                            | –          | Rad Fan – If Equipped                             |
| F05    | 40 Amp Green                                             | –          | Compressor for Air Suspension – If Equipped       |
| F06    | 40 Amp Green                                             | –          | Antilock Brakes/Electronic Stability Control Pump |
| F07    | 40 Amp Green                                             | –          | Starter Solenoid                                  |
| F08    | 20 Amp Blue (1500 LD/Cummins Diesel)                     | –          | Emissions Diesel – If Equipped                    |
| F09    | 40 Amp Green (Special Services Vehicle & Cummins Diesel) | –          | Diesel Fuel Heater – If Equipped                  |

## Power Distribution Center

The Power Distribution Center is located in the engine compartment near the battery. This center contains cartridge fuses, micro fuses, relays, and circuit breakers. A description of each fuse and component may be stamped on the inside cover, otherwise the cavity number of each fuse is stamped on the inside cover that corresponds to the following chart.



| Cavity | Cartridge Fuse                                               | Micro Fuse | Description                                                          |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| F10    | 40 Amp Green                                                 | –          | Body Controller / Exterior Lighting #2                               |
| F10    | 50 Amp Red                                                   | –          | Body Controller / Exterior Lighting #2 – If Equipped with Stop/Start |
| F11    | 30 Amp Pink                                                  | –          | Integrated Trailer Brake Module – If Equipped                        |
| F12    | 40 Amp Green                                                 | –          | Body Controller #3 / Power Locks                                     |
| F13    | 40 Amp Green                                                 | –          | Blower Motor                                                         |
| F14    | 40 Amp Green                                                 | –          | Body Controller #4 / Interior Lighting                               |
| F16    | 30 Amp Pink                                                  | –          | Smart Bar – If Equipped                                              |
| F19    | 20 Amp Blue (1500 LD Diesel)<br>30 Amp Pink (Cummins Diesel) | –          | SCR – If Equipped                                                    |
| F20    | 30 Amp Pink                                                  | –          | Passenger Door Module                                                |
| F21    | 30 Amp Pink                                                  | –          | Drive Train Control Module                                           |
| F22    | 20 Amp Blue<br>30 Amp Pink (Cummins Diesel)                  | –          | Engine Control Module                                                |
| F23    | 30 Amp Pink                                                  | –          | Body Controller #1 / Interior Lighting                               |
| F24    | 30 Amp Pink                                                  | –          | Driver Door Module                                                   |
| F25    | 30 Amp Pink                                                  | –          | Front Wiper                                                          |
| F26    | 30 Amp Pink                                                  | –          | Antilock Brakes / Stability Control Module / Valves                  |
| F28    | 20 Amp Blue                                                  | –          | Trailer Tow Backup Lights – If Equipped                              |
| F29    | 20 Amp Blue                                                  | –          | Trailer Tow Parking Lights – If Equipped                             |
| F30    | 30 Amp Pink                                                  | –          | Trailer Tow Receptacle                                               |
| F31    | 30 Amp Pink (1500 LD Diesel)                                 | –          | Urea Heater Control – If Equipped                                    |
| F32    | –                                                            | –          | Spare Fuse                                                           |
| F33    | 20 Amp Blue                                                  | –          | Special Services Vehicle Only                                        |

| Cavity | Cartridge Fuse | Micro Fuse    | Description                                                                              |
|--------|----------------|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| F34    | 30 Amp Pink    | –             | Vehicle System Interface Module #2 – If Equipped                                         |
| F35    | 30 Amp Pink    | –             | Sunroof – If Equipped                                                                    |
| F36    | 30 Amp Pink    | –             | Rear Defroster – If Equipped                                                             |
| F37    | 30 Amp Pink    | –             | Cummins Diesel Fuel Heater #2 – If Equipped                                              |
| F38    | 30 Amp Pink    | –             | Power Inverter 115V AC – If Equipped                                                     |
| F39    | 20 Amp Blue    | –             | Power Outlet – Special Services Only                                                     |
| F41    | –              | 10 Amp Red    | Active Grille Shutter – If Equipped                                                      |
| F42    | –              | 20 Amp Yellow | Horn                                                                                     |
| F44    | –              | 10 Amp Red    | Diagnostic Port                                                                          |
| F46    | –              | 10 Amp Red    | Upfitter – If Equipped                                                                   |
| F49    | –              | 10 Amp Red    | Instrument Panel Cluster (Except Fleet Vehicles)                                         |
| F50    | –              | 20 Amp Yellow | Air Suspension Control Module – If Equipped                                              |
| F51    | –              | 10 Amp Red    | Ignition Node Module / Keyless Ignition (Instrument Panel Cluster – Fleet Vehicles Only) |
| F52    | –              | 5 Amp Tan     | Battery Sensor                                                                           |
| F53    | –              | 20 Amp Yellow | Trailer Tow – Left Turn/Stop Lights                                                      |
| F54    | –              | 20 Amp Yellow | Adjustable Pedals                                                                        |
| F56    | –              | 15 Amp Blue   | Additional Diesel Content – If Equipped                                                  |
| F57    | –              | 20 Amp Yellow | Transmission                                                                             |
| F58    | –              | 20 Amp Yellow | Spare Fuse                                                                               |
| F59    | –              | 10 Amp Red    | SCR Relay – If Equipped                                                                  |
| F60    | –              | 15 Amp Blue   | Underhood Lamp                                                                           |



| Cavity | Cartridge Fuse | Micro Fuse                                     | Description                                            |
|--------|----------------|------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| F61    | –              | 10 Amp Red (1500 LD Diesel & Cummins Diesel)   | PM Sensor – If Equipped                                |
| F62    | –              | 10 Amp Red                                     | Air Conditioning Clutch                                |
| F63    | –              | 20 Amp Yellow                                  | Ignition Coils (Gas), Urea Heater (Cummins Diesel)     |
| F64    | –              | 25 Amp Clear                                   | Fuel Injectors / Powertrain                            |
| F65    | –              | –                                              | Spare Fuse                                             |
| F66    | –              | 10 Amp Red                                     | Sunroof / Passenger Window Switches / Rain Sensor      |
| F67    | –              | 10 Amp Red                                     | CD / DVD / Bluetooth Hands-free Module – If Equipped   |
| F69    | –              | 15 Amp Blue                                    | Mod SCR 12V (Cummins Diesel) – If Equipped             |
| F70    | –              | 30 Amp Green                                   | Fuel Pump Motor                                        |
| F71    | –              | 25 Amp Clear                                   | Amplifier                                              |
| F72    | –              | 10 Amp Red                                     | PCM – If Equipped                                      |
| F73    | –              | 20 Amp Yellow                                  | Fuel Transfer Pump (HD Only) – If Equipped             |
| F74    | –              | 20 Amp Yellow<br>(Gas Engine & 1500 LD Diesel) | Brake Vacuum Pump Gas/Diesel – If Equipped             |
| F75    | –              | 10 Amp Red                                     | Coolant Temperature Valve Actuator                     |
| F76    | –              | 10 Amp Red                                     | Antilock Brakes / Electronic Stability Control         |
| F77    | –              | 10 Amp Red                                     | Drivetrain Control Module/Front Axle Disconnect Module |
| F78    | –              | 10 Amp Red                                     | Engine Control Module / Electric Power Steering        |
| F79    | –              | 15 Amp Blue                                    | Clearance Lights                                       |
| F80    | –              | 10 Amp Red                                     | Universal Garage Door Opener / Compass                 |
| F81    | –              | 20 Amp Yellow                                  | Trailer Tow Right Turn / Stop Lights                   |
| F82    | –              | 10 Amp Red                                     | Steering Column Control Module / Cruise Control        |

| Cavity  | Cartridge Fuse | Micro Fuse    | Description                                                                 |
|---------|----------------|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| F84     | –              | 15 Amp Blue   | Switch Bank / Instrument Cluster                                            |
| F85     | –              | 10 Amp Red    | Airbag Module                                                               |
| F86     | –              | 10 Amp Red    | Airbag Module                                                               |
| F87     | –              | 10 Amp Red    | Air Suspension – If Equipped / Trailer Tow / Steering Column Control Module |
| F88     | –              | 15 Amp Blue   | Instrument Panel Cluster                                                    |
| F90/F91 | –              | 20 Amp Yellow | Power Outlet (Rear Seats) Customer Selectable                               |
| F93     | –              | 20 Amp Yellow | Cigar Lighter                                                               |
| F94     | –              | 10 Amp Red    | Shifter / Transfer Case Module                                              |
| F95     | –              | 10 Amp Red    | Rear Camera / Park Assist                                                   |
| F96     | –              | 10 Amp Red    | Rear Seat Heater Switch                                                     |
| F97     | –              | 25 Amp Clear  | Rear Heated Seats & Heated Steering Wheel – If Equipped                     |
| F98     | –              | 25 Amp Clear  | Front Heated Seats – If Equipped                                            |
| F99     | –              | 10 Amp Red    | Climate Control                                                             |
| F100    | –              | 10 Amp Red    | Upfitters – If Equipped                                                     |
| F101    | –              | 15 Amp Blue   | Electrochromatic Mirror / Smart High Beams – If Equipped                    |
| F104    | –              | 20 Amp Yellow | Power Outlets (Instrument Panel / Center Console)                           |



**CAUTION!**

- When installing the power distribution center cover, it is important to ensure the cover is properly positioned and fully latched. Failure to do so may allow water to get into the power distribution center and possibly result in an electrical system failure.
- When replacing a blown fuse, it is important to use only a fuse having the correct amperage rating. The use of a fuse with a rating other than indicated may result in a dangerous electrical system overload. If a properly rated fuse continues to blow, it indicates a problem in the circuit that must be corrected.

**JACKING AND TIRE CHANGING****WARNING!**

- Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid

**WARNING!**

- the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.
- Being under a jacked-up vehicle is dangerous. The vehicle could slip off the jack and fall on you. You could be crushed. Never put any part of your body under a vehicle that is on a jack. If you need to get under a raised vehicle, take it to a service center where it can be raised on a lift.
  - Never start or run the engine while the vehicle is on a jack.
  - The jack is designed to be used as a tool for changing tires only. The jack should not be used to lift the vehicle for service purposes. The vehicle should be jacked on a firm level surface only. Avoid ice or slippery areas.

**4500/5500 Models**

**These vehicles do not come equipped with a jack.**

**NOTE:**

Jacking and tire changing on 4500/5500 models should be performed by an authorized dealer, or knowledgeable service personnel with the appropriate heavy duty equipment, like a tire service company.

**Preparations For Jacking**

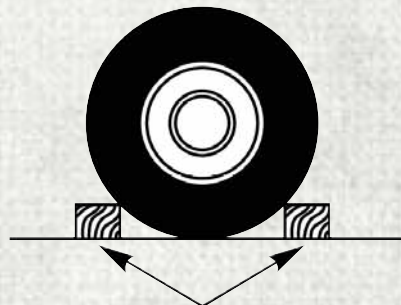
1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level surface. Avoid ice or slippery areas.

**WARNING!**

Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

2. Place the gear selector into PARK. On four-wheel drive vehicles, shift the transfer case to the 4L position.
3. Turn on the Hazard Warning flasher.

4. Apply the parking brake.
5. Turn the ignition OFF.
6. Block both the front and rear of the wheel diagonally opposite the jacking position. For example, if the right front wheel is being changed, block the left rear wheel.



**Wheel Blocked**

**NOTE:**

Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.

## Jacking Instructions 4500 And 5500 Series

### **WARNING!**

Carefully follow these tire changing warnings to help prevent personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Always park on a firm, level surface as far from the edge of the roadway as possible before raising the vehicle.
- Turn on the Hazard Warning flasher.
- Block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be raised.
- Apply the parking brake firmly and set the transmission in PARK.
- Never start or run the engine with the vehicle on a jack.
- Do not let anyone sit in the vehicle when it is on a jack.
- Do not get under the vehicle when it is on a jack. If you need to get under a raised vehicle, take it to a service center where it can be raised on a lift.
- Only use the jack in the positions indicated and for lifting this vehicle during a tire change.

### **WARNING!**

- If working on or near a roadway, be extremely careful of motor traffic.
- To assure that spare tires, flat or inflated, are securely stowed, spares must be stowed with the valve stem facing the ground.



**Warning Label**



**CAUTION!**

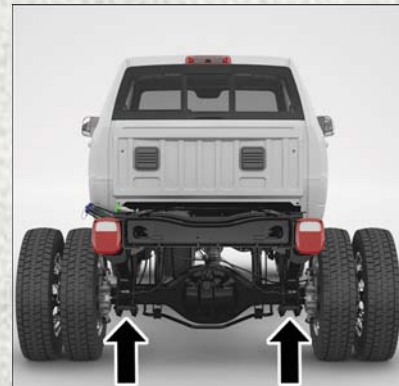
Do not attempt to raise the vehicle by jacking on locations other than those indicated in the Jacking Instructions for this vehicle.

1. If equipped, remove the spare wheel, jack, and tools from storage.
2. Using the lug wrench, loosen, but do not remove, the lug nuts by turning them counterclockwise one turn while the wheel is still on the ground.
3. When changing the front wheel, assemble the jack driver to the jack and connect the jack driver to the extension tube. Place the jack under the axle as close to the tire as possible with the jack driver extending to the front. Connect the extension tubes and lug wrench.



**Front Jacking Locations**

When changing a rear wheel, assemble the jack driver to the jack and connect the jack driver to the extension tubes. Securely place the jack under the sway bar bracket (unless both tires are flat on one side, then place jack under shock bracket) facing forward in vehicle. Connect the extension tubes and lug wrench.



**Rear Jacking Locations**

**Before raising the wheel off the ground, make sure that the jack will not damage surrounding truck parts and adjust the jack position as required.**

**NOTE:**

If the jack will not lower by turning the dial (thumbwheel) by hand, it may be necessary to use the jack driver in order to lower the jack.

4. By rotating the lug wrench clockwise, raise the vehicle until the wheel just clears the surface.

### **WARNING!**

Raising the vehicle higher than necessary can make the vehicle less stable. It could slip off the jack and hurt someone near it. Raise the vehicle only enough to remove the tire.

5. Remove the lug nuts and pull the wheel off. Install the spare wheel and lug nuts with the cone shaped end of the nuts toward the wheel on single rear wheel (SRW) models. On dual rear wheel models (DRW) the lug nuts are a two-piece assembly with a flat face. Lightly tighten the nuts. To avoid risk of forcing the vehicle off the jack, do not fully tighten the nuts until the vehicle has been lowered.
6. Using the lug wrench, finish tightening the nuts using a crisscross pattern. For the proper lug nut torque specifications refer to "Wheel And Tire Torque Specifications" in "Technical Specifications." If in doubt about the correct tightness, have

them checked with a torque wrench by an authorized dealer or at a service station.

### **WARNING!**

A loose tire or jack thrown forward in a collision or hard stop, could endanger the occupants of the vehicle. Always stow the jack parts and the spare tire in the places provided.

7. Install wheel center cap (if equipped) and remove wheel blocks. Do not install chrome or aluminum wheel center caps on the spare wheel. This may result in cap damage.
8. Lower the jack to its fully closed position. If the jack will not lower by turning the dial (thumbwheel) by hand, it may be necessary to use the jack driver in order to lower the jack. Stow the replaced tire, jack, and tools as previously described.
9. Adjust the tire pressure when possible.

## **To Stow The Flat Or Spare — If Equipped**

Refer to Upfitters Body Builders Guide for information on stowing your spare tire (if equipped).

## **Hub Caps/Wheel Covers — If Equipped**

The hub caps must be removed before raising the vehicle off the ground.

### **CAUTION!**

Use extreme caution when removing the front and rear center caps. Damage can occur to the center cap and/or the wheel if screwdriver type tools are used. A pulling motion, not a pry off motion, is recommended to remove the caps.

For single rear wheel (SRW) models, use the flat blade on the end of the lug wrench to pull the hub cap off. Insert the blade end into the pull off notch and carefully pull the hub cap off with a back and forth motion.



On 3500 models with dual rear wheels (DRW), you must first remove the hub caps. The jack handle driver has a hook at one end that will fit in the pull off notch of the rear hub caps. Position the hook and pull straight out on the ratchet firmly. The hub cap should pop off. The wheel skins can now be removed. For the front hub cap, use the flat blade on the end of the lug wrench to pull the caps off. The wheel skin can now be removed.

**CAUTION!**

- Use a pulling motion to remove the hub cap. Do not use a twisting motion when removing the hub cap, damage to the hub cap; finish may occur.
- The rear hub caps on the dual rear wheel has two pull off notches. Make sure that the hook of the jack handle driver is located squarely in the cap notch before attempting to pull off.

You must use the flat end of the lug wrench to pull off the wheel skins. Locate the hub cap pull notches (2 notches on each cap). Insert the flat tip completely and using a back and forth motion, loosen the wheel skin. Repeat this procedure around the tire until the skin pops off.

Replace the wheel skins first using a rubber mallet. When replacing the hub caps, tilt the cap retainer over the lug nut bolt circle and strike the high side down with a rubber mallet. Be sure that the hub caps and wheel skins are firmly seated around the wheel.

**JUMP STARTING**

If your vehicle has a discharged battery, it can be jump started using a set of jumper cables and a battery in another vehicle, or by using a portable battery booster pack. Jump starting can be dangerous if done improperly, so please follow the procedures in this section carefully.

**WARNING!**

Do not attempt jump starting if the battery is frozen. It could rupture or explode and cause personal injury.

**CAUTION!**

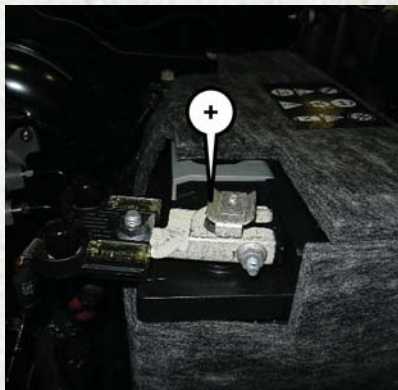
Do not use a portable battery booster pack or any other booster source with a system voltage greater than 12 Volts or damage to the battery, starter motor, alternator or electrical system may occur.

**NOTE:**

When using a portable battery booster pack, follow the manufacturer's operating instructions and precautions.

**Preparations For Jump Start**

The battery in your vehicle is located in the front of the engine compartment, behind the left headlight assembly.



**Positive Jumping Location**

**NOTE:**

The positive battery post may be covered with a protective cap if equipped. Lift up on the cap to gain access to the positive battery post. Do not jump off fuses. Only jump directly off positive post which has a positive (+) symbol on or around the post.

**WARNING!**

- Take care to avoid the radiator cooling fan whenever the hood is raised. It can start anytime the ignition switch is ON. You can be injured by moving fan blades.
- Remove any metal jewelry such as rings, watch bands and bracelets that could make an inadvertent electrical contact. You could be seriously injured.
- Batteries contain sulfuric acid that can burn your skin or eyes and generate hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Keep open flames or sparks away from the battery.

1. Apply the parking brake, shift the automatic transmission into PARK and turn the ignition OFF.
2. Turn off the heater, radio, and all unnecessary electrical accessories.
3. If using another vehicle to jump start the battery, park the vehicle within the jumper cables reach, apply the parking brake and make sure the ignition is OFF.

**WARNING!**

Do not allow vehicles to touch each other as this could establish a ground connection and personal injury could result.

**Jump Starting Procedure**

**WARNING!**

Failure to follow this jump starting procedure could result in personal injury or property damage due to battery explosion.

**CAUTION!**

Failure to follow these procedures could result in damage to the charging system of the booster vehicle or the discharged vehicle.

**Connecting The Jumper Cables**

1. Connect the positive (+) end of the jumper cable to the positive (+) post of the discharged vehicle.



**NOTE:**

**Do not jump off fuses. Only jump directly off positive post.**

2. Connect the opposite end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) post of the booster battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) end of the jumper cable to the negative (-) post of the booster battery.
4. Connect the opposite end of the negative (-) jumper cable to a good engine ground (exposed metal part of the discharged vehicle's engine) away from the battery and the fuel injection system.

**WARNING!**

Do not connect the jumper cable to the negative (-) post of the discharged battery. The resulting electrical spark could cause the battery to explode and could result in personal injury. Only use the specific ground point, do not use any other exposed metal parts.

5. Start the engine in the vehicle that has the booster battery, let the engine idle a few minutes, and then start the engine in the vehicle with the discharged battery.

**CAUTION!**

Do not connect jumper cable to any of the fuses on the positive battery terminal. The resulting electrical current will blow the fuse.

6. Once the engine is started, remove the jumper cables in the reverse sequence:

**Disconnecting The Jumper Cables**

1. Disconnect the negative (-) end of the jumper cable from the engine ground of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
2. Disconnect the opposite end of the negative (-) jumper cable from the negative (-) post of the booster battery.
3. Disconnect the positive (+) end of the jumper cable from the positive (+) post of the booster battery.

4. Disconnect the opposite end of the positive (+) jumper cable from the positive (+) post of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

If frequent jump starting is required to start your vehicle you should have the battery and charging system inspected at an authorized dealer.

**CAUTION!**

Accessories plugged into the vehicle power outlets draw power from the vehicle's battery, even when not in use (i.e., cellular devices, etc.). Eventually, if plugged in long enough without engine operation, the vehicle's battery will discharge sufficiently to degrade battery life and/or prevent the engine from starting.

## IF YOUR ENGINE OVERHEATS

In any of the following situations, you can reduce the potential for overheating by taking the appropriate action.

- On the highways — slow down.
- In city traffic — while stopped, place the transmission in NEUTRAL, but do not increase the engine idle speed while preventing vehicle motion with the brakes.

### NOTE:

There are steps that you can take to slow down an impending overheat condition:

- If your air conditioner (A/C) is on, turn it off. The A/C system adds heat to the engine cooling system and turning the A/C off can help remove this heat.
- You can also turn the temperature control to maximum heat, the mode control to floor and the blower control to high. This allows the heater core to act as a supplement to the radiator and aids in removing heat from the engine cooling system.

### WARNING!

You or others can be badly burned by hot engine coolant (antifreeze) or steam from your radiator. If you see or hear steam coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the radiator has had time to cool. Never try to open a cooling system pressure cap when the radiator or coolant bottle is hot.

### CAUTION!

Driving with a hot cooling system could damage your vehicle. If the temperature gauge reads HOT (H), pull over and stop the vehicle. Idle the vehicle with the air conditioner turned off until the pointer drops back into the normal range. If the pointer remains on HOT (H), and you hear continuous chimes, turn the engine off immediately and call for service.

## GEAR SELECTOR OVERRIDE

If a malfunction occurs and the gear selector cannot be moved out of the PARK position, you can use the following procedure to temporarily move the gear selector:



**Gear Selector Override Access Port**

1. Turn the engine OFF.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake.
3. Tilt the steering wheel to the full up position.



4. Press and maintain firm pressure on the brake pedal.
5. Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the access port (ringed circle) on the bottom of the steering column, and push and hold the override release lever up.
6. Move the gear selector to the NEUTRAL position.
7. The vehicle may then be started in NEUTRAL.

## **FREEING A STUCK VEHICLE**

If your vehicle becomes stuck in mud, sand, or snow, it can often be moved using a rocking motion. Turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around the front wheels. Next, shift back and forth between DRIVE and REVERSE (with automatic transmission) or SECOND GEAR and REVERSE (with manual transmission) while gently pressing the accelerator. Use the least amount of accelerator pedal pressure that will maintain the rocking motion, without spinning the wheels or racing the engine.

### **NOTE:**

Push the "ESC Off" switch, to place the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system in "Partial Off" mode, before rocking the vehicle. Refer to "Electronic Brake Control System" in "Safety" in the Owner's Manual for further information. Once the vehicle has been freed, push the "ESC Off" switch again to restore "ESC On" mode.

### **WARNING!**

Fast spinning tires can be dangerous. Forces generated by excessive wheel speeds may cause damage, or even failure, of the axle and tires. A tire could explode and injure someone. Do not spin your vehicle's wheels faster than 30 mph (48 km/h) or for longer than 30 seconds continuously without stopping when you are stuck and do not let anyone near a spinning wheel, no matter what the speed.

### **CAUTION!**

- Racing the engine or spinning the wheels may lead to transmission overheating and failure. Allow the engine to idle with the transmission in NEUTRAL for at least one minute after every five rocking-motion cycles. This will minimize overheating and reduce the risk of clutch or transmission failure during prolonged efforts to free a stuck vehicle.
- When "rocking" a stuck vehicle by shifting between DRIVE/SECOND GEAR and REVERSE, do not spin the wheels faster than 15 mph (24 km/h), or drivetrain damage may result.
- Revving the engine or spinning the wheels too fast may lead to transmission overheating and failure. It can also damage the tires. Do not spin the wheels above 30 mph (48 km/h) while in gear (no transmission shifting occurring).

## TOWING A DISABLED VEHICLE

This section describes procedures for towing a disabled vehicle using a commercial towing service. If the transmission and drivetrain are operable, disabled vehicles may also be towed as described under “Recreational Towing” in the “Starting And Operating” section.

| Towing Condition        | Wheels OFF The Ground | 2WD Models                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 4WD Models                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Flat Tow                | NONE                  | <b>If transmission is operable:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Transmission in <b>NEUTRAL</b></li> <li>• 30 mph (48 km/h) <b>max speed</b></li> <li>• 15 miles (24 km) <b>max distance</b></li> </ul> | <b>See instructions in “Recreational Towing” under “Starting And Operating”</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto Transmission in <b>PARK</b></li> <li>• Manual Transmission in gear ( <b>NOT NEUTRAL</b> )</li> <li>• Transfer Case in <b>NEUTRAL</b></li> <li>• Tow in <b>forward</b> direction</li> </ul> |
| Wheel Lift Or Dolly Tow | Front                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | <b>NOT ALLOWED</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|                         | Rear                  | OK                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | <b>NOT ALLOWED</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Flatbed                 | <b>ALL</b>            | <b>BEST METHOD</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                  | <b>BEST METHOD</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

Proper towing or lifting equipment is required to prevent damage to your vehicle. Use only tow bars and other equipment designed for this purpose, following equipment manufacturer’s instructions. Use of safety chains is mandatory. Attach a tow bar or other towing device to main structural members of the vehicle, not to bumpers or associated brackets. State and local laws regarding vehicles under tow must be observed.

If you must use the accessories (wipers, defrosters, etc.) while being towed, the ignition must be in the ON/RUN mode, not the ACC mode.

If the key fob is unavailable or the vehicle’s battery is discharged, refer to “Gear Selector Override” in this section for instructions on shifting the automatic transmission out of PARK for towing.

### CAUTION!

- Do not use sling type equipment when towing. Vehicle damage may occur.
- When securing the vehicle to a flat bed truck, do not attach to front or rear suspension components. Damage to your vehicle may result from improper towing.



## Two-Wheel Drive Models

The manufacturer recommends towing your vehicle with all four wheels **OFF** the ground using a flatbed.

If flatbed equipment is not available, and the transmission is operable, the vehicle may be towed (with the rear wheels on the ground) under the following conditions:

- The transmission must be in **NEUTRAL**.
- The towing speed must not exceed 30 mph (48 km/h).
- The towing distance must not exceed 15 miles (24 km).

If the transmission is not operable, or the vehicle must be towed faster than 30 mph (48 km/h) or farther than 15 miles (24 km), tow with the rear wheels **OFF** the ground. Acceptable methods are to tow the vehicle on a flatbed, or with the front wheels raised and the rear wheels on a towing dolly, or (when using a suitable steering wheel stabilizer to hold the front wheels in the straight position) with rear wheels raised and the front wheels on the ground.

### CAUTION!

Towing this vehicle in violation of the above requirements can cause severe engine and/or transmission damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

## Four-Wheel Drive Models

The manufacturer recommends towing with all wheels **OFF** the ground. Acceptable methods are to tow the vehicle on a flatbed or with one end of vehicle raised and the opposite end on a towing dolly.

If flatbed equipment is not available, and the transfer case is operable, the vehicle may be towed (in the forward direction, with **ALL** wheels on the ground), **IF** the transfer case is in **NEUTRAL** and the transmission is in **PARK** (for automatic transmissions) or in gear (**NOT** in **NEUTRAL**, for manual transmissions). Refer to “Recreational Towing” in “Starting And Operating” for further information and detailed instructions.

### CAUTION!

- Front or rear wheel lifts must not be used (if the remaining wheels are on the ground). Internal damage to the transmission or transfer case will occur if a front or rear wheel lift is used when towing.
- Towing this vehicle in violation of the above requirements can cause severe transmission and/or transfer case damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

## Emergency Tow Hooks — If Equipped

Your vehicle may be equipped with emergency tow hooks.

### NOTE:

For off-road recovery, it is recommended to use both of the front tow hooks to minimize the risk of damage to the vehicle.

### WARNING!

- Do not use a chain for freeing a stuck vehicle. Chains may break, causing serious injury or death.
- Stand clear of vehicles when pulling with tow hooks. Tow straps may become disengaged, causing serious injury.

### CAUTION!

Tow hooks are for emergency use only, to rescue a vehicle stranded off road. Do not use tow hooks for tow truck hookup or highway towing. You could damage your vehicle.

## ENHANCED ACCIDENT RESPONSE SYSTEM (EARS)

This vehicle is equipped with an Enhanced Accident Response System.

Please refer to “Occupant Restraint Systems” in “Safety” for further information on the Enhanced Accident Response System (EARS) function.

## EVENT DATA RECORDER (EDR)

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle’s systems performed under certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle.

Please refer to “Occupant Restraint Systems” in “Safety” for further information on the Event Data Recorder (EDR).





# SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

|                                                                   |            |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>SCHEDULED SERVICING — GASOLINE ENGINE . . . . .</b>            | <b>170</b> |
| Maintenance Plan — Gasoline Engine . . .                          | 170        |
| Heavy Duty Use Of The Vehicle . . . . .                           | 172        |
| <b>SCHEDULED SERVICING — 6.7L CUMMINS DIESEL ENGINE . . . . .</b> | <b>173</b> |
| Oil Change Indicator System — Cummins Diesel . . . . .            | 173        |
| Perform Service Indicator — Cummins Diesel . . . . .              | 174        |
| Maintenance Plan — Cummins Diesel Engine . . . . .                | 174        |
| <b>ENGINE COMPARTMENT . . . . .</b>                               | <b>178</b> |

|                                                                              |            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 6.4L Engine . . . . .                                                        | 178        |
| 6.7L Diesel Engine — Six-Speed AS69RC HD (3500/Chassis Cab Models) . . . . . | 179        |
| <b>DEALER SERVICE — 6.7L DIESEL ENGINE . . . . .</b>                         | <b>180</b> |
| Engine Air Cleaner Filter . . . . .                                          | 180        |
| Draining Fuel/Water Separator Filter . . .                                   | 181        |
| Engine Mounted Fuel Filter Replacement . . . . .                             | 182        |
| Underbody Mounted Fuel Filter Replacement . . . . .                          | 183        |
| Priming If The Engine Has Run Out Of Fuel . . . . .                          | 184        |

|                                                                           |            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>HOISTING . . . . .</b>                                                 | <b>185</b> |
| <b>TIRES . . . . .</b>                                                    | <b>185</b> |
| Tire Safety Information . . . . .                                         | 185        |
| Tires — General Information . . . . .                                     | 192        |
| Tire Types . . . . .                                                      | 196        |
| Spare Tires — If Equipped. . . . .                                        | 197        |
| Wheel And Wheel Trim Care . . . . .                                       | 199        |
| <b>DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADES . . . . .</b> | <b>200</b> |
| Treadwear . . . . .                                                       | 200        |
| Traction Grades . . . . .                                                 | 200        |
| Temperature Grades. . . . .                                               | 201        |



## SCHEDULED SERVICING — GASOLINE ENGINE

Your vehicle is equipped with an automatic oil change indicator system. The oil change indicator system will remind you that it is time to take your vehicle in for scheduled maintenance.

Based on engine operation conditions, the oil change indicator message will illuminate. This means that service is required for your vehicle. Operating conditions such as frequent short-trips, trailer tow, extremely hot or cold ambient temperatures, and E85 fuel usage will influence when the “Oil Change Required” message is displayed. Severe Operating Conditions can cause the change oil message to illuminate as early as 3,500 miles (5,600 km) since last reset. Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible, within the next 500 miles (805 km).

Your authorized dealer will reset the oil change indicator message after completing the scheduled oil change. If a scheduled oil change is performed by someone other than your authorized dealer, the message can be

reset by referring to the steps described under “Warning And Indicator Lights” or “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” in your Owner’s Manual for further information.

### Gasoline Engines:

Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 8,000 miles (13,000 km), twelve months or 350 hours of engine run time, whichever comes first. The 350 hours of engine run or idle time is generally only a concern for fleet customers.

### Severe Duty:

Change Engine Oil at 4,000 miles (6,500 km) or 350 hours of engine run time if the vehicle is operated in a dusty and off road environment or is operated predominately at idle or very low engine RPM’s. This type of vehicle use is considered Severe Duty.

### Once A Month Or Before A Long Trip:

- Check engine oil level
- Check windshield washer fluid level
- Check the tire inflation pressures and look for unusual wear or damage

- Check the fluid levels of the coolant reservoir, brake master cylinder, power steering and automatic transmission, and fill as needed
- Check function of all interior and exterior lights

## Maintenance Plan – Gasoline Engine

### Required Maintenance

Refer to the maintenance plan on the following pages for required maintenance.

| At Every Oil Change Interval As Indicated By Oil Change Indicator System:                                                                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Change oil and filter.</li> </ul>                                                                                                           |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rotate the tires. <b>Rotate at the first sign of irregular wear, even if it occurs before the oil indicator system turns on.</b></li> </ul> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inspect engine cooling system protection and hoses.</li> </ul>                                                                              |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inspect exhaust system.</li> </ul>                                                                                                          |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inspect engine air cleaner if using in dusty or off-road conditions.</li> </ul>                                                             |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inspect battery and clean and tighten terminals as required.</li> </ul>                                                                     |

| At Every Oil Change Interval As Indicated By Oil Change Indicator System:                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Inspect automatic transmission fluid if equipped with dipstick.</li> <li>Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, hoses and park brake.</li> </ul> |

| At Every Oil Change Interval As Indicated By Oil Change Indicator System:                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Inspect front end, and lubricate — If equipped with serviceable fittings.</li> <li>Lube the front drive shaft fitting (4X4 models only).</li> </ul> |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Mileage or time passed<br>(whichever comes first) |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 20,000                                            | 30,000 | 40,000 | 50,000 | 60,000 | 70,000  | 80,000  | 90,000  | 100,000 | 110,000 | 120,000 | 130,000 | 140,000 | 150,000 |
| Or Years:                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 2                                                 | 3      | 4      | 5      | 6      | 7       | 8       | 9       | 10      | 11      | 12      | 13      | 14      | 15      |
| Or Kilometers:                                                                                                                                                                                            | 32,000                                            | 48,000 | 64,000 | 80,000 | 96,000 | 112,000 | 128,000 | 144,000 | 160,000 | 176,000 | 192,000 | 208,000 | 224,000 | 240,000 |
| <b>Additional Inspections</b>                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                   |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| Inspect the CV/Universal joints.                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                   | X      |        |        | X      |         |         | X       |         |         | X       |         |         | X       |
| Inspect front suspension, tie rod ends, and replace if necessary.                                                                                                                                         | X                                                 |        | X      |        | X      |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |         |
| Inspect the front and rear axle surfaces. If gear oil leakage is suspected, check the fluid level. If using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing, change axle fluid. | X                                                 |        | X      |        | X      |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |         |
| Inspect the brake linings, parking brake function.                                                                                                                                                        | X                                                 |        | X      |        | X      |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |         |
| <b>Additional Maintenance</b>                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                   |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| Replace engine air filter.                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                   | X      |        |        | X      |         |         | X       |         |         | X       |         |         | X       |
| Replace spark plugs. **                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                   |        |        |        |        |         |         |         | X       |         |         |         |         |         |
| Flush and replace the engine coolant at 10 years or 150,000 miles (240,000 km) whichever comes first.                                                                                                     |                                                   |        |        |        |        |         |         |         | X       |         |         |         |         | X       |
| Change the automatic transmission fluid (AS66RC Transmission Only).                                                                                                                                       |                                                   | X      |        |        |        |         |         | X       |         |         |         |         |         | X       |



| Mileage or time passed<br>(whichever comes first)                                                                                                           | 20,000 | 30,000 | 40,000 | 50,000 | 60,000 | 70,000  | 80,000  | 90,000  | 100,000 | 110,000 | 120,000 | 130,000 | 140,000 | 150,000 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| Or Years:                                                                                                                                                   | 2      | 3      | 4      | 5      | 6      | 7       | 8       | 9       | 10      | 11      | 12      | 13      | 14      | 15      |
| Or Kilometers:                                                                                                                                              | 32,000 | 48,000 | 64,000 | 80,000 | 96,000 | 112,000 | 128,000 | 144,000 | 160,000 | 176,000 | 192,000 | 208,000 | 224,000 | 240,000 |
| Change the automatic transmission fluid and sump filter (AS66RC Transmission Only).                                                                         |        |        |        |        | X      |         |         |         |         |         | X       |         |         |         |
| Change the automatic transmission fluid and filter(s) (66RFE Transmission Only), if using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, or frequent trailer towing. |        |        |        |        | X      |         |         |         |         |         | X       |         |         |         |
| Change the automatic transmission fluid and filter(s) (66RFE transmission).                                                                                 |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         | X       |         |         |         |
| Inspect the transfer case fluid, change for any of the following: police, taxi, fleet, or frequent trailer towing.                                          |        | X      |        |        | X      |         |         | X       |         |         | X       |         |         | X       |
| Change the transfer case fluid.                                                                                                                             |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         | X       |         |         |         |
| Inspect and replace PCV valve if necessary.                                                                                                                 |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         | X       |         |         |         |         |         |

\*\* The spark plug change interval is mileage based only, yearly intervals do not apply.

### WARNING!

- You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Do only service work for which you have the knowledge and the right equipment. If you have any

### WARNING!

doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.

- Failure to properly inspect and maintain your vehicle could result in a component malfunction and effect vehicle handling and performance. This could cause an accident.

## Heavy Duty Use Of The Vehicle

Change engine oil at 4,000 miles (6,500 km) or 350 hours of engine run time if the vehicle is operated in a dusty and off road environment or is operated predominately at idle or only very low engine RPM's. This type of vehicle use is considered Severe Duty.

## SCHEDULED SERVICING — 6.7L CUMMINS DIESEL ENGINE

### CAUTION!

Failure to perform the required maintenance items may result in damage to the vehicle.

#### At Each Stop For Fuel

Check the engine oil level at least 30 minutes after a fully warmed engine is shut off. Checking the oil level while the vehicle is on level ground will improve the accuracy of the oil level reading. Add oil only when the level is at or below the ADD or MIN mark.

#### Once A Month

- Inspect the batteries, and clean and tighten the terminals as required.
- Check the fluid levels of the coolant reservoir, brake master cylinder, and automatic transmission (if equipped), and add as needed.

#### At Each Oil Change

- Change the engine oil filter.
- Inspect the exhaust system.
- Inspect engine air filter.
- Check the coolant level, hoses, and clamps.
- Inspect front end, and lubricate — If equipped with serviceable fittings.
- Lube the front drive shaft fitting (4X4 models only).

Inspection and service should also be performed anytime a malfunction is observed or suspected. Retain all receipts.

#### Oil Change Indicator System — Cummins Diesel

Your vehicle is equipped with an engine oil change indicator system. This system will alert you when it is time to change your engine oil by displaying the words “Oil Change Due” in your instrument cluster display. The oil change reminder will remind the owner to change the engine oil every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 500 hours, whichever comes first, except for the Chassis

Cab models configured with optional B20 capability that are using greater than 5% levels of biodiesel, which are 12,500 miles (20,000 km) or 400 hours, whichever comes first. Failure to change the engine oil per the maintenance schedule can result in internal engine damage.

**Replace the engine oil and oil filter every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or six months, or sooner if prompted by the oil change indicator system. Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or six months, whichever comes first.**

#### NOTE:

- Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or six months or 500 Hours, whichever comes first.
- Replace the engine oil and oil filter every 12,500 miles (20,000 km) or 400 hours, whichever comes first when running greater than 5% levels of biodiesel (Chassis Cab models configured with optional B20 capability).



If Chassis Cab models configured with optional B20 capability are operated with greater than 5% levels of biodiesel, the oil change interval must not exceed 12,500 miles (20,000 km) or 400 hours, whichever comes first under any circumstances. See the Fuel Requirements section for more information regarding operation with biodiesel blend (B6-B20) fuel meeting ASTM specification D-7467.

## Perform Service Indicator — Cummins Diesel

Your vehicle will require emissions maintenance at a set interval. To help remind you when this maintenance is due, the instrument cluster will display “Perform Service”. When the “Perform Service” message is displayed on the instrument cluster it is necessary to have the emissions maintenance per-

formed. Emissions maintenance may include replacing the Closed Crankcase Ventilation (CCV) filter element. The procedure for clearing and resetting the “Perform Service” indicator message is located in the appropriate Service Information.

## Maintenance Plan — Cummins Diesel Engine

| Mileage or time passed (whichever comes first):                                                                                                                 | 7,500  | 15,000 | 22,500 | 30,000 | 37,500 | 45,000 | 52,500 | 60,000 | 67,500  | 75,000  | 82,500  | 90,000  | 97,500  | 105,000 | 112,500 | 120,000 | 127,500 | 135,000 | 142,500 | 150,000 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| Or Months:                                                                                                                                                      | 6      | 12     | 18     | 24     | 30     | 36     | 42     | 48     | 54      | 60      | 66      | 72      | 78      | 84      | 90      | 96      | 102     | 108     | 114     | 120     |
| Or Kilometers:                                                                                                                                                  | 12,000 | 24,000 | 36,000 | 48,000 | 60,000 | 72,000 | 84,000 | 96,000 | 108,000 | 120,000 | 132,000 | 144,000 | 156,000 | 168,000 | 180,000 | 192,000 | 204,000 | 216,000 | 228,000 | 240,000 |
| Change engine oil every 15,000 miles (24 000 km) or six months or 500 Hours or sooner if prompted by the oil change indicator system, whichever comes first. ** | X      | X      | X      | X      | X      | X      | X      | X      | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       |
| <b>Additional Inspections</b>                                                                                                                                   |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| Check the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) tank, refill if necessary.                                                                                                 | X      | X      | X      | X      | X      | X      | X      | X      | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       |
| Rotate the tires.                                                                                                                                               | X      | X      | X      | X      | X      | X      | X      | X      | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       |
| Lubricate front drive shaft fitting (4x4).                                                                                                                      | X      | X      | X      | X      | X      | X      | X      | X      | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       |

| Mileage or time passed (whichever comes first):                                                                                                                     | 7,500  | 15,000 | 22,500 | 30,000 | 37,500 | 45,000 | 52,500 | 60,000 | 67,500  | 75,000  | 82,500  | 90,000  | 97,500  | 105,000 | 112,500 | 120,000 | 127,500 | 135,000 | 142,500 | 150,000 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| Or Months:                                                                                                                                                          | 6      | 12     | 18     | 24     | 30     | 36     | 42     | 48     | 54      | 60      | 66      | 72      | 78      | 84      | 90      | 96      | 102     | 108     | 114     | 120     |
| Or Kilometers:                                                                                                                                                      | 12,000 | 24,000 | 36,000 | 48,000 | 60,000 | 72,000 | 84,000 | 96,000 | 108,000 | 120,000 | 132,000 | 144,000 | 156,000 | 168,000 | 180,000 | 192,000 | 204,000 | 216,000 | 228,000 | 240,000 |
| Inspect front end, and lubricate — If equipped with serviceable fittings.                                                                                           | X      | X      | X      | X      | X      | X      | X      | X      | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       | X       |
| Inspect engine air filter, replace if necessary. ****                                                                                                               |        | X      |        | X      |        | X      |        | X      |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |
| Inspect the front suspension, tie rod ends and boot seals for cracks or leaks and all parts for damage, wear, improper looseness or end play; replace if necessary. |        | X      |        | X      |        | X      |        | X      |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |
| Inspect the brake linings.                                                                                                                                          |        |        | X      |        |        | X      |        |        | X       |         |         | X       |         |         | X       |         |         | X       |         |         |
| Inspect and adjust parking brake.                                                                                                                                   |        |        | X      |        |        | X      |        |        | X       |         |         | X       |         |         | X       |         |         | X       |         |         |
| Inspect drive belt; replace as necessary.                                                                                                                           |        |        | X      |        |        | X      |        |        | X       |         |         | X       |         |         | X       |         |         | X       |         |         |
| Inspect wheel bearings.                                                                                                                                             |        |        |        | X      |        |        |        | X      |         |         |         | X       |         |         |         | X       |         |         |         | X       |
| <b>Additional Maintenance</b>                                                                                                                                       |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| Replace cabin air filter.                                                                                                                                           |        |        | X      |        |        | X      |        |        | X       |         |         | X       |         |         | X       |         |         | X       |         |         |
| Replace engine fuel filter element.                                                                                                                                 |        | X      |        | X      |        | X      |        | X      |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |
| Replace chassis mounted fuel filter element.                                                                                                                        |        | X      |        | X      |        | X      |        | X      |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |         | X       |



| Mileage or time passed (whichever comes first):                                                                                                                                                                | 7,500  | 15,000 | 22,500 | 30,000 | 37,500 | 45,000 | 52,500 | 60,000 | 67,500  | 75,000  | 82,500  | 90,000  | 97,500  | 105,000 | 112,500 | 120,000 | 127,500 | 135,000 | 142,500 | 150,000 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| Or Months:                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 6      | 12     | 18     | 24     | 30     | 36     | 42     | 48     | 54      | 60      | 66      | 72      | 78      | 84      | 90      | 96      | 102     | 108     | 114     | 120     |
| Or Kilometers:                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 12,000 | 24,000 | 36,000 | 48,000 | 60,000 | 72,000 | 84,000 | 96,000 | 108,000 | 120,000 | 132,000 | 144,000 | 156,000 | 168,000 | 180,000 | 192,000 | 204,000 | 216,000 | 228,000 | 240,000 |
| Inspect the front and rear axle surfaces. If gear oil leakage is suspected, check the fluid level. If using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing change the axle fluid. * |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| Inspect the transfer case fluid (4x4), change for any of the following: police, taxi, fleet, or frequent trailer towing.                                                                                       |        |        |        | X      |        |        |        | X      |         |         |         | X       |         |         |         | X       |         |         |         | X       |
| Change the transfer case fluid (4x4).                                                                                                                                                                          |        |        |        |        |        |        |        | X      |         |         |         |         |         |         |         | X       |         |         |         |         |
| Change automatic transmission fluid (AS69RC transmission only).                                                                                                                                                |        |        |        | X      |        |        |        | X      |         |         |         | X       |         |         |         | X       |         |         |         | X       |
| Change the automatic transmission fluid and sump filter (AS69RC transmission only).                                                                                                                            |        |        |        |        |        |        |        | X      |         |         |         |         |         |         |         | X       |         |         |         |         |
| Change automatic transmission fluid and filter(s) if using your vehicle for any of the following: police, fleet, or frequent trailer towing (68RFE transmission only).                                         |        |        |        |        |        |        |        | X      |         |         |         |         |         |         |         | X       |         |         |         |         |
| Change automatic transmission fluid and filter(s).                                                                                                                                                             |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |         | X       |         |         |         |         |
| Change the manual transmission fluid if using your vehicle for any of the following: police, fleet, or frequent trailer towing.                                                                                |        |        |        |        |        |        |        | X      |         |         |         |         |         |         |         | X       |         |         |         |         |
| Replace Crankcase Ventilation Filter (CCV).                                                                                                                                                                    |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        | X       |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         | X       |         |         |

| Mileage or time passed (whichever comes first): | 7,500  | 15,000 | 22,500 | 30,000 | 37,500 | 45,000 | 52,500 | 60,000 | 67,500  | 75,000  | 82,500  | 90,000  | 97,500  | 105,000 | 112,500 | 120,000 | 127,500 | 135,000 | 142,500 | 150,000 |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| Or Months:                                      | 6      | 12     | 18     | 24     | 30     | 36     | 42     | 48     | 54      | 60      | 66      | 72      | 78      | 84      | 90      | 96      | 102     | 108     | 114     | 120     |
| Or Kilometers:                                  | 12,000 | 24,000 | 36,000 | 48,000 | 60,000 | 72,000 | 84,000 | 96,000 | 108,000 | 120,000 | 132,000 | 144,000 | 156,000 | 168,000 | 180,000 | 192,000 | 204,000 | 216,000 | 228,000 | 240,000 |
| Flush and replace power steering fluid.         |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         | X       |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
| Flush and replace engine coolant. ***           |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         | X       |
| Adjust valve lash clearance.                    |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         | X       |

Inspection and service should also be performed anytime a malfunction is observed or suspected. Retain all receipts.

\* Inspect the front and rear axle surfaces every 20,000 miles (32,000 km). If gear oil leakage is suspected, check the fluid level. If using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing change the axle fluid every 20,000 miles (32,000 km).

\*\* Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 15,000 miles (24 000 km) or six months or 500 Hours, whichever comes first.

\*\*\* The manufacturer highly recommends that all cooling system service, maintenance,

and repairs be performed by your local authorized dealer.

\*\*\*\* Under no circumstances should the air cleaner filter element exceed 30,000 miles (48,000 km) or 24 months, whichever comes first.

### WARNING!

- You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Do only service work for which you have the knowledge and the right equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a

### WARNING!

service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.

- Failure to properly inspect and maintain your vehicle could result in a component malfunction and effect vehicle handling and performance. This could cause an accident.

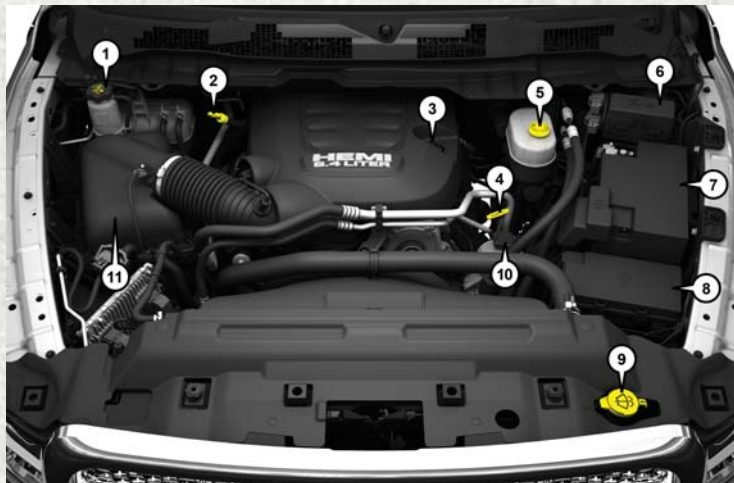
### CAUTION!

\*\*\*The manufacturer highly recommends that all cooling system service, maintenance, and repairs be performed by your local authorized dealer.



## ENGINE COMPARTMENT

### 6.4L Engine

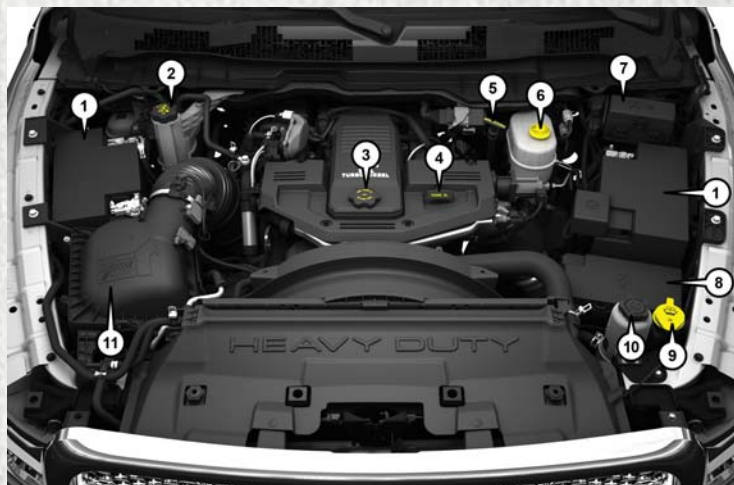


- 1 — Engine Coolant Pressure Cap
- 2 — Transmission Dipstick
- 3 — Engine Oil Fill
- 4 — Engine Oil Dipstick

- 5 — Brake Fluid Reservoir
- 6 — Aux Power Distribution Center (Fuses)
- 7 — Battery
- 8 — Power Distribution Center (Fuses)

- 9 — Washer Fluid Reservoir
- 10 — Power Steering Fluid Reservoir
- 11 — Air Cleaner Filter

## 6.7L Diesel Engine — Six-Speed AS69RC HD (3500/Chassis Cab Models)



- 1 — Battery
- 2 — Engine Coolant Pressure Cap
- 3 — Engine Oil Fill
- 4 — Engine Oil Dipstick

- 5 — Automatic Transmission Dipstick
- 6 — Brake Fluid Reservoir
- 7 — Aux Power Distribution Center
- 8 — Power Distribution Center

- 9 — Washer Fluid Reservoir
- 10 — Power Steering Fluid Reservoir
- 11 — Air Cleaner Filter



## DEALER SERVICE — 6.7L DIESEL ENGINE

Your authorized dealer has the qualified service personnel, special tools, and equipment to perform all service operations in an expert manner. Service Manuals are available which include detailed service information for your vehicle. Refer to these Service Manuals before attempting any procedure yourself.

### NOTE:

Intentional tampering with emissions control systems may void your warranty and could result in civil penalties being assessed against you.

### WARNING!

You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Only do service work for which you have the knowledge and the proper equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.

## Engine Air Cleaner Filter

### WARNING!

The air induction system (air cleaner, hoses, etc.) provides a measure of protection. Do not remove the air induction system (air cleaner, hoses, etc.) unless such removal is necessary for repair or maintenance. Make sure that no one is near the engine compartment before starting the vehicle with the air induction system (air cleaner, hoses, etc.) removed. Failure to do so can result in serious personal injury.

### CAUTION!

All air entering the engine intake must be filtered. The abrasive particles in unfiltered air will cause rapid wear to engine components.

The condition of the air cleaner filter is monitored by the Engine Control Module. The “SERVICE AIR FILTER” message will display in the instrument cluster when service is

required. Refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

The “SERVICE AIR FILTER” message could be displayed periodically. This is because engine air flow requirements change based on driving conditions. As the filter becomes more restrictive and air flow requirements increase the “SERVICE AIR FILTER” message will be displayed. The message may not be displayed in subsequent drive cycles if the same conditions are not met. The air filter element should be replaced within 250 miles (402 km) from the first time this message is displayed to ensure proper engine operation during all driving conditions.

### CAUTION!

Driving with a restricted air filter can cause engine damage. Driving in dusty environments for extended periods will lead to rapid air filter plugging. Action should be taken as soon as the “SERVICE AIR FILTER” message is displayed.

If the vehicle experiences a sudden loss of engine power while being driven in heavy snow or rain, or when plowing snow, and/or the “SERVICE AIR FILTER” message is displayed on the instrument cluster along with a chime that repeats every 60 seconds, visually inspect the air filter for snow/ice build up or extreme water saturation. If the air filter is not damaged, remove all snow/ice and reinstall air filter. If the air filter is damaged, replace filter element.

#### NOTE:

The air filter housing contains a Mass Air Flow sensor. This sensor is critical to proper engine operation and component longevity. Any damage or modification to this sensor could result in major engine and/or exhaust aftertreatment damage. We recommend you use Mopar brand parts.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Air Filter Monitor, a visual inspection of the air cleaner filter element is recommended every 15,000 miles (24,000km) or 12 months – whichever occurs first. **Under no circumstances should the air cleaner filter element exceed**

**30,000 miles (48,000 km) or 24 months, whichever comes first.**

#### CAUTION!

Many aftermarket performance air filter elements do not adequately filter the air entering the engine. Use of such filters can severely damage your engine.

### Draining Fuel/Water Separator Filter

There are two fuel filter assemblies. One is located on the driver's side of the engine. The best access to this water drain valve is from under the hood. The second one is on the under body, located in front of the rear axle above the drive shaft on pick-up models. The Chassis Cab models second filter location is on the frame behind the front axle. The best access to this water drain valve is from under the vehicle.

#### CAUTION!

- Do not drain the fuel/water separator filter when the engine is running.
- Diesel fuel will damage blacktop paving surfaces. Drain the filter into an appropriate container.

If water is detected in the water separator while the engine is running, or while the ignition switch is in the ON position, the “Water In Fuel Indicator Light” will illuminate and an audible chime will be heard five times. At this point you should stop the engine and drain the water from both of the filters.

#### CAUTION!

If the “Water In Fuel Indicator Light” remains on, DO NOT START the engine before you drain water from the fuel filters to avoid engine damage.

If the “Water In Fuel Indicator Light” comes on and a single chime is heard while you are driving, or with the ignition switch in the ON



position, there may be a problem with your water separator wiring or sensor. See your authorized dealer for service.

Upon proper draining of the water from both fuel filters, the "Water In Fuel Indicator Light" will remain illuminated for approximately 10 seconds. If the water was drained while the engine was running, the "Water In Fuel Indicator Light" may remain on for approximately three minutes.

**NOTE:**

Care should be taken in disposing of used fluids from your vehicle. Used fluids, indiscriminately discarded, can present a problem to the environment. Contact an authorized dealer, service station, or government agency for advice on recycling programs and for where used fluids and filters can be properly disposed of in your area.

Drain the fuel/water separator filters when the "Water In Fuel Indicator Light" is ON. Within 10 minutes of vehicle shutdown, turn the engine mounted filter drain valve (located on the side of the filter assembly) counterclockwise 1/4 turn, and turn the under body mounted filter drain valve (located on the

bottom of the filter assembly) counterclockwise 1 full turn. Then turn the ignition switch to the ON position, and allow any accumulated water to drain. Leave the drain valve open until all water and contaminants have been removed. When clean fuel is visible, close the drain valves by turning them fully clockwise, and turn the ignition switch to OFF.

If more than a couple ounces/milliliters of fuel have been drained, follow the directions for "Priming If The Engine Has Run Out Of Fuel."

## Engine Mounted Fuel Filter Replacement

**NOTE:**

- Using a fuel filter that does not meet the manufacturer's filtration and water separating requirements can severely impact fuel system life and reliability.
- The engine mounted filter housing is equipped with a No-Filter-No-Run (NFNR) feature. Engine will not run if:

1. No filter is installed.

2. Inferior/Non-approved filter is used. Use of OEM filter is required to ensure vehicle will run.

### CAUTION!

- Diesel fuel will damage blacktop paving surfaces. Drain the filter into an appropriate container.
- Do not prefill the fuel filter when installing a new fuel filter. There is a possibility debris could be introduced into the fuel filter during this action. It is best to install the filter dry and allow the in-tank lift pump to prime the fuel system.

1. Ensure engine is turned off.
2. Place drain pan under the fuel filter drain hose.
3. Open the water drain valve 1/4 turn counterclockwise and completely drain fuel and water into the approved container.
4. Close the water drain valve.
5. Remove lid using a socket or strap wrench. Rotate counterclockwise for removal. Remove used o-ring and discard it.

6. Remove the used filter cartridge from the housing and dispose of according to your local regulations.
7. Wipe clean the sealing surfaces of the lid and housing.
8. Install new o-ring back into ring groove on the filter housing and lubricate with clean engine oil.
9. Remove new filter cartridge from plastic bag and install into housing.

**NOTE:**

Do not remove cartridge from bag until you reach this step in order to keep cartridge clean.

10. Push down on the cartridge to ensure it is properly seated. **Do not pre-fill the filter housing with fuel.**
11. Install lid onto housing and tighten to 22.5 ft lbs (30.5 N.m). Do not over-tighten the lid.
12. Prime the engine using the procedure in "Priming If The Engine Has Run Out Of Fuel." Then start the engine and confirm there are no leaks.

## Underbody Mounted Fuel Filter Replacement

**NOTE:**

- Using a fuel filter that does not meet the manufacturer's filtration and water separating requirements can severely impact fuel system life and reliability.
- The underbody mounted filter housing will cause the engine not to run if:
  1. No filter is installed.

### CAUTION!

- Diesel fuel will damage blacktop paving surfaces. Drain the filter into an appropriate container.
- Do not prefill the fuel filter when installing a new fuel filter. There is a possibility debris could be introduced into the fuel filter during this action. It is best to install the filter dry and allow the in-tank lift pump to prime the fuel system.

1. Ensure engine is turned off.

2. Place drain pan under the fuel filter drain hose.
3. Open the water drain valve 1 full turn counterclockwise and completely drain fuel and water into the approved container.
4. Close the water drain valve.
5. Remove lid using a socket or strap wrench. Rotate counterclockwise for removal. Remove used o-ring and discard it.
6. Remove the used filter cartridge from the housing and dispose of according to your local regulations.
7. Wipe clean the sealing surfaces of the lid and housing.
8. Install new o-ring back into ring groove on the filter housing and lubricate with clean engine oil.

**NOTE:**

WIF sensor is re-usable. Service kit comes with new o-ring for filter canister and WIF sensor.



## Priming If The Engine Has Run Out Of Fuel

### WARNING!

Do not open the high pressure fuel system with the engine running. Engine operation causes high fuel pressure. High pressure fuel spray can cause serious injury or death.

1. Add a substantial amount of fuel to the tank, approximately 2 to 5 gal (8L to 19L).
2. Turn ignition switch to the start position to engage starter for one second, return ignition switch to run position. This will activate in tank fuel pump for approximately 15 seconds. Repeat this process twice.
3. Start the engine using the "Normal Starting" procedure. Refer to "Starting Procedures" in "Starting and Operating" for further information.

### CAUTION!

Do not engage the starter motor for more than 15 seconds at a time. Allow two minutes between the cranking intervals.

### NOTE:

The engine may run rough until the air is forced from all the fuel lines.

### WARNING!

Do not use alcohol or gasoline as a fuel blending agent. They can be unstable under certain conditions and be hazardous or explosive when mixed with diesel fuel.

### CAUTION!

Due to lack of lubricants in alcohol or gasoline, the use of these fuels can cause damage to the fuel system.

### NOTE:

- A maximum blend of 5% biodiesel, meeting ASTM specification D-975 may be used with your Cummins diesel engine. (Chassis Cab models not configured with B20 capability.)
- A maximum blend of 20% biodiesel, meeting ASTM specification D-7467 may be used with your Cummins diesel engine. (Pickup models and Chassis Cab models configured with B20 capability.)
- Use of biodiesel mixture in excess of 20% can negatively impact the fuel filter's ability to separate water from the fuel, resulting in high pressure fuel system corrosion or damage.
- Ethanol blends are not recommended or approved for use with your Cummins diesel engine.
- In addition, commercially available fuel additives are not necessary for the proper operation of your Cummins diesel engine.

## HOISTING

A conventional floor jack may be used at the jacking locations. Refer to the graphics that show jacking locations. However, a floor jack or frame hoist must never be used on any other parts of the underbody.

### CAUTION!

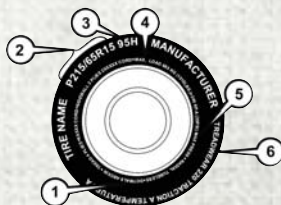
Never use a floor jack directly under the differential housing of a loaded truck or damage to your vehicle may result.

## TIRES

### Tire Safety Information

Tire safety information will cover aspects of the following information: Tire Markings, Tire Identification Numbers, Tire Terminology and Definitions, Tire Pressures, and Tire Loading.

### Tire Markings



### Tire Markings

|                                          |                                                |
|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| 1 — U.S. DOT Safety Standards Code (TIN) | 4 — Maximum Load                               |
| 2 — Size Designation                     | 5 — Maximum Pressure                           |
| 3 — Service Description                  | 6 — Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades |

### NOTE:

- P (Passenger) — Metric tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards. P-Metric tires have the letter “P” molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: P215/65R15 95H.
- European — Metric tire sizing is based on European design standards. Tires designed to this standard have the tire size molded into the sidewall beginning with the section width. The letter “P” is absent from this tire size designation. Example: 215/65R15 96H.
- LT (Light Truck) — Metric tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards. The size designation for LT-Metric tires is the same as for P-Metric tires except for the letters “LT” that are molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: LT235/85R16.
- Temporary spare tires are designed for temporary emergency use only. Temporary high pressure compact spare tires have the letter “T” or “S” molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: T145/80D18 103M.



- High flotation tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards and it begins with the tire diameter molded into the sidewall. Example: 31x10.5 R15 LT.

### Tire Sizing Chart

#### EXAMPLE:

**Example Size Designation: P215/65R15XL 95H, 215/65R15 96H, LT235/85R16C, T145/80D18 103M, 31x10.5 R15 LT**

**P** = Passenger car tire size based on U.S. design standards, or

**"....blank...."** = Passenger car tire based on European design standards, or

**LT** = Light truck tire based on U.S. design standards, or

**T or S** = Temporary spare tire or

**31** = Overall diameter in inches (in)

**215, 235, 145** = Section width in millimeters (mm)

**65, 85, 80** = Aspect ratio in percent (%)

- Ratio of section height to section width of tire, or

**10.5** = Section width in inches (in)

**R** = Construction code

- "R" means radial construction, or
- "D" means diagonal or bias construction

**15, 16, 18** = Rim diameter in inches (in)

#### Service Description:

**95** = Load Index

- A numerical code associated with the maximum load a tire can carry

#### EXAMPLE:

##### **H** = Speed Symbol

- A symbol indicating the range of speeds at which a tire can carry a load corresponding to its load index under certain operating conditions
- The maximum speed corresponding to the speed symbol should only be achieved under specified operating conditions (i.e., tire pressure, vehicle loading, road conditions, and posted speed limits)

##### **Load Identification:**

Absence of the following load identification symbols on the sidewall of the tire indicates a Standard Load (SL) tire:

- **XL** = Extra load (or reinforced) tire, or
- **LL** = Light load tire or
- **C, D, E, F, G** = Load range associated with the maximum load a tire can carry at a specified pressure

**Maximum Load** – Maximum load indicates the maximum load this tire is designed to carry

**Maximum Pressure** – Maximum pressure indicates the maximum permissible cold tire inflation pressure for this tire

#### **Tire Identification Number (TIN)**

The TIN may be found on one or both sides of the tire; however, the date code may only be on one side. Tires with white sidewalls will have

the full TIN, including the date code, located on the white sidewall side of the tire. Look for the TIN on the outboard side of black sidewall

tires as mounted on the vehicle. If the TIN is not found on the outboard side, then you will find it on the inboard side of the tire.

#### EXAMPLE:

DOT MA L9 ABCD 0301

##### **DOT** = Department of Transportation

- This symbol certifies that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation tire safety standards and is approved for highway use

**MA** = Code representing the tire manufacturing location (two digits)

**L9** = Code representing the tire size (two digits)

**ABCD** = Code used by the tire manufacturer (one to four digits)



**EXAMPLE:**

**03** = Number representing the week in which the tire was manufactured (two digits)

- 03 means the 3rd week

**01** = Number representing the year in which the tire was manufactured (two digits)

- 01 means the year 2001
- Prior to July 2000, tire manufacturers were only required to have one number to represent the year in which the tire was manufactured. Example: 031 could represent the 3rd week of 1981 or 1991

**Tire Terminology And Definitions**

| <b>Term</b>                                     | <b>Definition</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>B-Pillar</b>                                 | The vehicle B-Pillar is the structural member of the body located behind the front door.                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Cold Tire Inflation Pressure</b>             | Cold tire inflation pressure is defined as the tire pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) after sitting for a minimum of three hours. Inflation pressure is measured in units of PSI (pounds per square inch) or kPa (kilopascals). |
| <b>Maximum Inflation Pressure</b>               | The maximum inflation pressure is the maximum permissible cold tire inflation pressure for this tire. The maximum inflation pressure is molded into the sidewall.                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Recommended Cold Tire Inflation Pressure</b> | Vehicle manufacturer's recommended cold tire inflation pressure as shown on the tire placard.                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Tire Placard</b>                             | A label permanently attached to the vehicle describing the vehicle's loading capacity, the original equipment tire sizes and the recommended cold tire inflation pressures.                                                                                                                                |

## Tire Loading And Tire Pressure

### NOTE:

The proper cold tire inflation pressure is listed on the driver's side B-Pillar or the rear edge of the driver's side door.

Check the inflation pressure of each tire, including the spare tire (if equipped), at least monthly and inflate to the recommended pressure for your vehicle.



Example Tire Placard Location (Door)



Example Tire Placard Location (B-Pillar)

### Tire And Loading Information Placard



## TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION

SEATING CAPACITY - TOTAL 5 FRONT 2 REAR 3

THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED 2000 KG OR 4400 LBS

| TIRE                         | FRONT         | REAR          | SPARE         |
|------------------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| ORIGINAL TIRE SIZE           | P195/70R14    | P195/70R14    | T125/70D15    |
| COLD TIRE INFLATION PRESSURE | 200kPa, 29PSI | 200kPa, 29PSI | 420kPa, 60PSI |

SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

4N109268

1

2

3

4

Tire And Loading Information Placard

This placard tells you important information about the:

1. Number of people that can be carried in the vehicle.
2. Total weight your vehicle can carry.
3. Tire size designed for your vehicle.
4. Cold tire inflation pressures for the front, rear, and spare tires.

### Loading

The vehicle maximum load on the tire must not exceed the load carrying capacity of the tire on your vehicle. You will not exceed the tire's load carrying capacity if you adhere to the loading conditions, tire size, and cold tire inflation pressures specified on the Tire and Loading Information placard in "Vehicle Loading" in the "Starting And Operating" section of your Owner's Manual.

### NOTE:

Under a maximum loaded vehicle condition, gross axle weight ratings (GAWRs) for the front and rear axles must not be exceeded.



To determine the maximum loading conditions of your vehicle, locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs" on the Tire and Loading Information placard. The combined weight of occupants, cargo/luggage and trailer tongue weight (if applicable) should never exceed the weight referenced here.

### Steps For Determining Correct Load Limit—

- (1) Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.
- (2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
- (3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

(4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5x150) = 650 lbs.)

(5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

(6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

### Metric Example For Load Limit

For example, if "XXX" amount equals 635 kg and there will be five 68 kg passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 295 kg (635-340 (5x68) = 295 kg) as shown in step 4.

### NOTE:

- If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. The following table shows examples on how to calculate total load, cargo/luggage, and towing capacities of your vehicle with varying seating configurations and number and size of occupants. This table is for illustration purposes only and may not be accurate for the seating and load carry capacity of your vehicle.
- For the following example, the combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 865 lbs (392 kg).

| Occupants        |       |      | Combined weight of<br>occupants and cargo<br>from Tire Placard | MINUS | Combined Occupant's<br>weight | = | AVAILABLE<br>Cargo/Luggage and<br>Trailer Tongue<br>Weight |
|------------------|-------|------|----------------------------------------------------------------|-------|-------------------------------|---|------------------------------------------------------------|
| TOTAL            | FRONT | REAR |                                                                |       |                               |   |                                                            |
| <b>EXAMPLE 1</b> |       |      | 865 lbs                                                        | minus | 670 lbs                       | = | 195 lbs                                                    |
| 5                | 2     | 3    |                                                                |       |                               |   |                                                            |
| <b>EXAMPLE 2</b> |       |      | 865 lbs                                                        | minus | 540 lbs                       | = | 325 lbs                                                    |
| 3                | 2     | 1    |                                                                |       |                               |   |                                                            |
| <b>EXAMPLE 3</b> |       |      | 865 lbs                                                        | minus | 400 lbs                       | = | 465 lbs                                                    |
| 2                | 2     | 0    |                                                                |       |                               |   |                                                            |

811a4d11

**WARNING!**

Overloading of your tires is dangerous. Overloading can cause tire failure, affect vehicle handling, and increase your stopping distance. Use tires of the recommended load capacity for your vehicle. Never overload them.

**Tires — General Information****Tire Pressure**

Proper tire inflation pressure is essential to the safe and satisfactory operation of your vehicle. Four primary areas are affected by improper tire pressure:

- Safety and Vehicle Stability
- Economy
- Tread Wear
- Ride Comfort

**Safety****WARNING!**

- Improperly inflated tires are dangerous and can cause collisions.
- Underinflation increases tire flexing and can result in overheating and tire failure.
- Overinflation reduces a tire's ability to cushion shock. Objects on the road and chuckholes can cause damage that result in tire failure.
- Overinflated or underinflated tires can affect vehicle handling and can fail suddenly, resulting in loss of vehicle control.
- Unequal tire pressures can cause steering problems. You could lose control of your vehicle.
- Unequal tire pressures from one side of the vehicle to the other can cause the vehicle to drift to the right or left.
- Always drive with each tire inflated to the recommended cold tire inflation pressure.

Both under-inflation and over-inflation affect the stability of the vehicle and can produce a feeling of sluggish response or over responsiveness in the steering.

**NOTE:**

- Unequal tire pressures from side to side may cause erratic and unpredictable steering response.
- Unequal tire pressure from side to side may cause the vehicle to drift left or right.

**Fuel Economy**

Underinflated tires will increase tire rolling resistance resulting in higher fuel consumption.

**Tread Wear**

Improper cold tire inflation pressures can cause abnormal wear patterns and reduced tread life, resulting in the need for earlier tire replacement.

**Ride Comfort And Vehicle Stability**

Proper tire inflation contributes to a comfortable ride. Over-inflation produces a jarring and uncomfortable ride.

## Tire Inflation Pressures

The proper cold tire inflation pressure is listed on the driver's side B-Pillar or rear edge of the driver's side door.

At least once a month:

- Check and adjust tire pressure with a good quality pocket-type pressure gauge. Do not make a visual judgement when determining proper inflation. Tires may look properly inflated even when they are under-inflated.
- Inspect tires for signs of tire wear or visible damage.

### CAUTION!

After inspecting or adjusting the tire pressure, always reinstall the valve stem cap. This will prevent moisture and dirt from entering the valve stem, which could damage the valve stem.

Inflation pressures specified on the placard are always "cold tire inflation pressure". Cold tire inflation pressure is defined as the tire pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours, or driven less than

1 mile (1.6 km) after sitting for a minimum of three hours. The cold tire inflation pressure must not exceed the maximum inflation pressure molded into the tire sidewall.

Check tire pressures more often if subject to a wide range of outdoor temperatures, as tire pressures vary with temperature changes.

Tire pressures change by approximately 1 psi (7 kPa) per 12°F (7°C) of air temperature change. Keep this in mind when checking tire pressure inside a garage, especially in the Winter.

Example: If garage temperature = 68°F (20°C) and the outside temperature = 32°F (0°C) then the cold tire inflation pressure should be increased by 3 psi (21 kPa), which equals 1 psi (7 kPa) for every 12°F (7°C) for this outside temperature condition.

Tire pressure may increase from 2 to 6 psi (13 to 40 kPa) during operation. DO NOT reduce this normal pressure build up or your tire pressure will be too low.

## Tire Pressures For High Speed Operation

The manufacturer advocates driving at safe speeds and within posted speed limits. Where speed limits or conditions are such that the vehicle can be driven at high speeds, maintaining correct tire inflation pressure is very important. Increased tire pressure and reduced vehicle loading may be required for high-speed vehicle operation. Refer to an authorized tire dealer or original equipment vehicle dealer for recommended safe operating speeds, loading and cold tire inflation pressures.

### WARNING!

High speed driving with your vehicle under maximum load is dangerous. The added strain on your tires could cause them to fail. You could have a serious collision. Do not drive a vehicle loaded to the maximum capacity at continuous speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).



## Radial Ply Tires

### WARNING!

Combining radial ply tires with other types of tires on your vehicle will cause your vehicle to handle poorly. The instability could cause a collision. Always use radial ply tires in sets of four. Never combine them with other types of tires.

### Tire Repair

If your tire becomes damaged, it may be repaired if it meets the following criteria:

- The tire has not been driven on when flat.
- The damage is only on the tread section of your tire (sidewall damage is not repairable).
- The puncture is no greater than a  $\frac{1}{4}$  of an inch (6 mm).

Consult an authorized tire dealer for tire repairs and additional information.

Damaged Run Flat tires, or Run Flat tires that have experienced a loss of pressure should be replaced immediately with another Run Flat tire of identical size and service description (Load Index and Speed Symbol).

### Run Flat Tires — If Equipped

Run Flat tires allow you the capability to drive 50 miles (80 km) at 50 mph (80 km/h) after a rapid loss of inflation pressure. This rapid loss of inflation is referred to as the Run Flat mode. A Run Flat mode occurs when the tire inflation pressure is of/or below 14 psi (96 kPa). Once a Run Flat tire reaches the run flat mode it has limited driving capabilities and needs to be replaced immediately. A Run Flat tire is not repairable.

It is not recommended driving a vehicle loaded at full capacity or to tow a trailer while a tire is in the run flat mode.

See the tire pressure monitoring section for more information.

## Tire Spinning

When stuck in mud, sand, snow, or ice conditions, do not spin your vehicle's wheels above 30 mph (48 km/h) or for longer than 30 seconds continuously without stopping.

Refer to “Freeing A Stuck Vehicle” in “In Case Of Emergency” for further information.

### WARNING!

Fast spinning tires can be dangerous. Forces generated by excessive wheel speeds may cause tire damage or failure. A tire could explode and injure someone. Do not spin your vehicle's wheels faster than 30 mph (48 km/h) for more than 30 seconds continuously when you are stuck, and do not let anyone near a spinning wheel, no matter what the speed.

## Tread Wear Indicators

Tread wear indicators are in the original equipment tires to help you in determining when your tires should be replaced.



**Tire Tread**

- 1 — Worn Tire  
2 — New Tire

These indicators are molded into the bottom of the tread grooves. They will appear as bands when the tread depth becomes a 1/16 of an inch (1.6 mm). When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the tire should be replaced. Refer to “Replacement Tires” in this section for further information.

## Life Of Tire

The service life of a tire is dependent upon varying factors including, but not limited to:

- Driving style.
- Tire pressure - Improper cold tire inflation pressures can cause uneven wear patterns to develop across the tire tread. These abnormal wear patterns will reduce tread life, resulting in the need for earlier tire replacement.
- Distance driven.
- Performance tires, tires with a speed rating of V or higher, and Summer tires typically have a reduced tread life. Rotation of these tires per the vehicle scheduled maintenance is highly recommended.

### **WARNING!**

Tires and the spare tire should be replaced after six years, regardless of the remaining tread. Failure to follow this warning can result in sudden tire failure. You could lose control and have a collision resulting in serious injury or death.

Keep dismounted tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible. Protect tires from contact with oil, grease, and gasoline.

## Replacement Tires

The tires on your new vehicle provide a balance of many characteristics. They should be inspected regularly for wear and correct cold tire inflation pressures. The manufacturer strongly recommends that you use tires equivalent to the originals in size, quality and performance when replacement is needed. Refer to the paragraph on “Tread Wear Indicators” in this section. Refer to the Tire and Loading Information placard or the Vehicle Certification Label for the size designation of your tire. The Load Index and Speed Symbol for your tire will be found on the original equipment tire sidewall.

See the Tire Sizing Chart example found in the “Tire Safety Information” section of this manual for more information relating to the Load Index and Speed Symbol of a tire.

It is recommended to replace the two front tires or two rear tires as a pair. Replacing just one tire can seriously affect your vehicle's handling. If you ever replace a wheel, make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.



It is recommended you contact an authorized tire dealer or original equipment dealer with any questions you may have on tire specifications or capability. Failure to use equivalent replacement tires may adversely affect the safety, handling, and ride of your vehicle.

### **WARNING!**

- Do not use a tire, wheel size, load rating, or speed rating other than that specified for your vehicle. Some combinations of unapproved tires and wheels may change suspension dimensions and performance characteristics, resulting in changes to steering, handling, and braking of your vehicle. This can cause unpredictable handling and stress to steering and suspension components. You could lose control and have a collision resulting in serious injury or death. Use only the tire and wheel sizes with load ratings approved for your vehicle.
- Never use a tire with a smaller load index or capacity, other than what was originally equipped on your vehicle. Using a tire with a smaller load index could re-

### **WARNING!**

sult in tire overloading and failure. You could lose control and have a collision.

- Failure to equip your vehicle with tires having adequate speed capability can result in sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.

### **CAUTION!**

Replacing original tires with tires of a different size may result in false speedometer and odometer readings.

## **Tire Types**

### **All Season Tires — If Equipped**

All Season tires provide traction for all seasons (Spring, Summer, Fall, and Winter). Traction levels may vary between different all season tires. All season tires can be identified by the M+S, M&S, M/S or MS designation on the tire sidewall. Use all season tires only in sets of four; failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle.

### **Summer Or Three Season Tires — If Equipped**

Summer tires provide traction in both wet and dry conditions, and are not intended to be driven in snow or on ice. If your vehicle is equipped with Summer tires, be aware these tires are not designed for Winter or cold driving conditions. Install Winter tires on your vehicle when ambient temperatures are less than 40°F (5°C) or if roads are covered with ice or snow. For more information, contact an authorized dealer.

Summer tires do not contain the all season designation or mountain/snowflake symbol on the tire sidewall. Use Summer tires only in sets of four; failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle.

### **WARNING!**

Do not use Summer tires in snow/ice conditions. You could lose vehicle control, resulting in severe injury or death. Driving too fast for conditions also creates the possibility of loss of vehicle control.

## Snow Tires

Some areas of the country require the use of snow tires during the Winter. Snow tires can be identified by a “mountain/snowflake” symbol on the tire sidewall.



If you need snow tires, select tires equivalent in size and type to the original equipment tires. Use snow tires only in sets of four; failure to do so may adversely affect the

safety and handling of your vehicle.

Snow tires generally have lower speed ratings than what was originally equipped with your vehicle and should not be operated at sustained speeds over 75 mph (120 km/h). For speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h) refer to original equipment or an authorized tire dealer for recommended safe operating speeds, loading and cold tire inflation pressures.

While studded tires improve performance on ice, skid and traction capability on wet or dry surfaces may be poorer than that of non-studded tires. Some states prohibit studded tires; therefore, local laws should be checked before using these tire types.

## Spare Tires — If Equipped

For vehicles equipped with Tire Service Kit instead of a spare tire, please refer to “Tire Service Kit” in “In Case Of Emergency” in the Owner’s Manual for further information.

### CAUTION!

Because of the reduced ground clearance, do not take your vehicle through an automatic car wash with a compact or limited use temporary spare installed. Damage to the vehicle may result.

## Spare Tire Matching Original Equipped Tire And Wheel — If Equipped

Your vehicle may be equipped with a spare tire and wheel equivalent in look and function to the original equipment tire and wheel found on the front or rear axle of your vehicle.

This spare tire may be used in the tire rotation for your vehicle. If your vehicle has this option, refer to an authorized tire dealer for the recommended tire rotation pattern.

## Compact Spare Tire — If Equipped

The compact spare is for temporary emergency use only. You can identify if your vehicle is equipped with a compact spare by looking at the spare tire description on the Tire and Loading Information Placard located on the driver’s side door opening or on the sidewall of the tire. Compact spare tire descriptions begin with the letter “T” or “S” preceding the size designation. Example: T145/80D18 103M.

T, S = Temporary Spare Tire

Since this tire has limited tread life, the original equipment tire should be repaired (or replaced) and reinstalled on your vehicle at the first opportunity.

Do not install a wheel cover or attempt to mount a conventional tire on the compact spare wheel, since the wheel is designed



specifically for the compact spare tire. Do not install more than one compact spare tire and wheel on the vehicle at any given time.

### **WARNING!**

Compact and collapsible spares are for temporary emergency use only. With these spares, do not drive more than 50 mph (80 km/h). Temporary use spares have limited tread life. When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the temporary use spare tire needs to be replaced. Be sure to follow the warnings, which apply to your spare. Failure to do so could result in spare tire failure and loss of vehicle control.

### **Collapsible Spare Tire — If Equipped**

The collapsible spare is for temporary emergency use only. You can identify if your vehicle is equipped with a collapsible spare by looking at the spare tire description on the Tire and Loading Information Placard located on the driver's side door opening or on the sidewall of the tire.

Collapsible spare tire description example: 165/80-17 101P.

Since this tire has limited tread life, the original equipment tire should be repaired (or replaced) and reinstalled on your vehicle at the first opportunity.

Inflate collapsible tire only after the wheel is properly installed to the vehicle. Inflate the collapsible tire using the electric air pump before lowering the vehicle.

Do not install a wheel cover or attempt to mount a conventional tire on the collapsible spare wheel, since the wheel is designed specifically for the collapsible spare tire.

### **WARNING!**

Compact and Collapsible spares are for temporary emergency use only. With these spares, do not drive more than 50 mph (80 km/h). Temporary use spares have limited tread life. When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the temporary use spare tire needs to be replaced. Be sure to follow the warnings, which apply to your spare. Failure to do so could result in spare tire failure and loss of vehicle control.

### **Full Size Spare — If Equipped**

The full size spare is for temporary emergency use only. This tire may look like the originally equipped tire on the front or rear axle of your vehicle, but it is not. This spare tire may have limited tread life. When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the temporary use full size spare tire needs to be replaced. Since it is not the same as your original equipment tire, replace (or repair) the original equipment tire and reinstall on the vehicle at the first opportunity.

### **Limited Use Spare — If Equipped**

The limited use spare tire is for temporary emergency use only. This tire is identified by a label located on the limited use spare wheel. This label contains the driving limitations for this spare. This tire may look like the original equipped tire on the front or rear axle of your vehicle, but it is not. Installation of this limited use spare tire affects vehicle handling. Since it is not the same as your original equipment tire, replace (or repair) the original equipment tire and reinstall on the vehicle at the first opportunity.

## WARNING!

Limited use spares are for emergency use only. Installation of this limited use spare tire affects vehicle handling. With this tire, do not drive more than the speed listed on the limited use spare wheel. Keep inflated to the cold tire inflation pressures listed on your Tire and Loading Information Placard located on the driver's side B-Pillar or the rear edge of the driver's side door. Replace (or repair) the original equipment tire at the first opportunity and reinstall it on your vehicle. Failure to do so could result in loss of vehicle control.

## Wheel And Wheel Trim Care

All wheels and wheel trim, especially aluminum and chrome plated wheels, should be cleaned regularly using mild (neutral Ph) soap and water to maintain their luster and to prevent corrosion. Wash wheels with the same soap solution recommended for the body of the vehicle and remember to always wash when the surfaces are not hot to the touch.

Your wheels are susceptible to deterioration caused by salt, sodium chloride, magnesium chloride, calcium chloride, etc., and other road chemicals used to melt ice or control dust on dirt roads. Use a soft cloth or sponge and mild soap to wipe away promptly. Do not use harsh chemicals or a stiff brush. They can damage the wheel's protective coating that helps keep them from corroding and tarnishing.

## CAUTION!

Avoid products or automatic car washes that use acidic solutions or strong alkaline additives or harsh brushes. Many aftermarket wheel cleaners and automatic car washes may damage the wheel's protective finish. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Only car wash soap, Mopar Wheel Cleaner or equivalent is recommended.

When cleaning extremely dirty wheels including excessive brake dust, care must be taken in the selection of tire and wheel cleaning chemicals and equipment to prevent damage to the wheels. Mopar Wheel Treatment or Mopar Chrome Cleaner or their equivalent is recommended or select a non-abrasive, non-acidic cleaner for aluminum or chrome wheels.

## CAUTION!

Do not use scouring pads, steel wool, a bristle brush, metal polishes or oven cleaner. These products may damage the wheel's protective finish. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Only car wash soap, Mopar Wheel Cleaner or equivalent is recommended.



**NOTE:**

If you intend parking or storing your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle and apply the brakes to remove the water droplets from the brake components. This activity will remove the red rust on the brake rotors and prevent vehicle vibration when braking.

**Dark Vapor Chrome, Black Satin Chrome, or Low Gloss Clear Coat Wheels**

**CAUTION!**

If your vehicle is equipped with these specialty wheels, **DO NOT USE** wheel cleaners, abrasives, or polishing compounds. They will permanently damage this finish and such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. **HAND WASH ONLY USING MILD SOAP AND WATER WITH A SOFT CLOTH.** Used on a regular basis; this is all that is required to maintain this finish.

## DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADES

The following tire grading categories were established by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. The specific grade rating assigned by the tire's manufacturer in each category is shown on the sidewall of the tires on your vehicle.

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal safety requirements in addition to these grades.

### Treadwear

The Treadwear grade is a comparative rating, based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual

conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### Traction Grades

The Traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. These grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement, as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

**WARNING!**

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

## Temperature Grades

The Temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat, when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance, which all passenger vehicle tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel, than the minimum required by law.

### WARNING!

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under-inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.





# TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

## WHEEL AND TIRE TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS . . . . .204

Torque Specifications . . . . .204

Dual Rear Wheels . . . . .205

## FLUID CAPACITIES — GAS ENGINE . . .206

## FLUID CAPACITIES — 6.7L CUMMINS DIESEL ENGINE . . . . .207

## FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS — GAS ENGINE . . . . .208

Engine . . . . .208

Chassis . . . . .209

## FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS — 6.7L DIESEL ENGINES . . . . .209

Engine . . . . .209

Chassis . . . . .211

## MOPAR ACCESSORIES . . . . .212

Authentic Accessories By Mopar . . . . .212



## WHEEL AND TIRE TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

Proper lug nut/bolt torque is very important to ensure that the wheel is properly mounted to the vehicle. Any time a wheel has been removed and reinstalled on the vehicle, the lug nuts/bolts should be torqued using a properly calibrated torque wrench using a high quality six sided (hex) deep wall socket.

### Torque Specifications

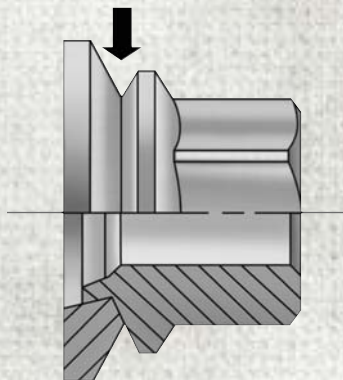
| Lug Nut/<br>Bolt<br>Torque    | Lug Nut/<br>Bolt Type | **Lug<br>Nut/Bolt<br>Size | Lug Nut/<br>Bolt<br>Socket<br>Size |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 130<br>Ft-Lbs<br>(176<br>N·m) | Cone                  | M14 x<br>1.50             | 22 mm                              |
| 129<br>Ft-Lbs<br>(175<br>N·m) | Flanged               |                           |                                    |

\*\*Use only your authorized dealer recommended lug nuts/bolts and clean or remove any dirt or oil before tightening.

Inspect the wheel mounting surface prior to mounting the tire and remove any corrosion or loose particles.

#### NOTE:

Dual wheels are flat mounted, center piloted. The lug nuts are a two-piece assembly. When the tires are being rotated or replaced, clean these lug nuts at the interface between the hex and the washer. Ensure that the socket is fully engaged on the lug nut/bolt (do not insert it half way).



**Two-Piece Lug Nut**

Do not oil wheel studs. For chrome wheels, do not substitute with chrome plated wheel nuts.

Retighten the wheel nuts in the same sequence to the torques listed in the table. Go through the sequence a second time to verify that specific torque has been achieved. Retighten to specifications after 25 miles (40 km) and check the lug nut/bolt torque to be sure that all the lug nuts/bolts are properly seated against the wheel.

It is recommended that wheel stud nuts be kept torqued to specifications at all times. Torque wheel stud nuts to specifications at each lubrication interval.

All wheel nuts should be tightened occasionally to eliminate the possibility of wheel studs being sheared or the bolt holes in the wheels becoming elongated. This is especially important during the first few hundred miles/kilometers of operation to allow the wheel nuts to become properly set. All wheel nuts should first be firmly seated against the wheel. The wheel nuts should then be tightened to recommended torque. Tighten the wheel nuts to final torque in increments.

Progress around the bolt circle, tightening the wheel nut opposite to the wheel nut just previously tightened until final torque is achieved.

### WARNING!

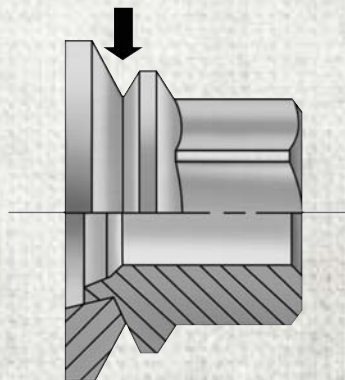
To avoid the risk of forcing the vehicle off the jack, do not tighten the lug nuts fully until the vehicle has been lowered. Failure to follow this warning may result in personal injury.

## Dual Rear Wheels

Slots in the wheels will assist in properly orienting the inner and outer wheels. Align these slots when assembling the wheels for best access to the tire valve on the inner wheel. The tires of both dual wheels must be completely off the ground when tightening to insure wheel centering and maximum wheel clamping.

Dual wheel models require a special heavy-duty lug nut tightening adapter (included with the vehicle) to correctly tighten the lug nuts. Also, when it is necessary to remove and

install dual rear wheels, use a proper vehicle lifting device.

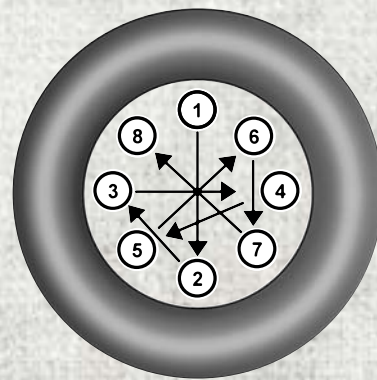


Oil Interface Location

### NOTE:

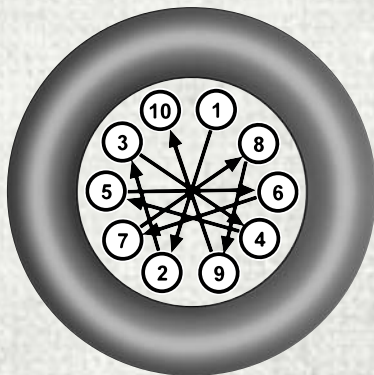
When installing a spare tire (if equipped) as part of a dual rear wheel end combination, the tire diameter of the two individual tires must be compared. If there is a significant difference, the larger tire should be installed in a front location. The correct direction of rotation for dual tire installations must also be observed.

These dual rear wheels should be tightened as follows:



Wheel Nuts Numbered Sequence (8)





Wheel Nuts Numbered Sequence (10)

It is recommended that wheel stud nuts be kept torqued to specifications at all times. Torque wheel stud nuts to specifications at each lubrication interval.

### FLUID CAPACITIES — GAS ENGINE

|                                                                                           | U.S.        | Metric      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| <b>Fuel (Approximate)</b>                                                                 |             |             |
| Standard Rear Tank                                                                        | 52 Gallons  | 197 Liters  |
| Optional Midship Tank                                                                     | 22 Gallons  | 83 Liters   |
| <b>Engine Oil With Filter</b>                                                             |             |             |
| 6.4L Engine (We recommend you use SAE 0W-40, Synthetic API Certified)                     | 7 Quarts    | 6.6 Liters  |
| <b>Cooling System</b>                                                                     |             |             |
| 6.4L Engine (We recommend you use Mopar Antifreeze/Coolant 10 Year/150,000 Mile Formula). | 16.6 Quarts | 15.7 Liters |

## FLUID CAPACITIES — 6.7L CUMMINS DIESEL ENGINE

|                                                                                             | U.S.        | Metric      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| <b>Fuel (Approximate)</b>                                                                   |             |             |
| 2500/3500 Standard Cab Longbed Models                                                       | 28 Gallons  | 106 Liters  |
| 2500/3500 Crew/Mega Cab Shortbed Models                                                     | 31 Gallons  | 129 Liters  |
| 2500/3500 Crew Cab Longbed Models                                                           | 32 Gallons  | 132 Liters  |
| Standard Rear Tank – Chassis Cab Only                                                       | 52 Gallons  | 197 Liters  |
| Optional Midship Tank – Chassis Cab Only                                                    | 22 Gallons  | 83 Liters   |
| Diesel Exhaust Fluid Tank (Approximate) – 2500/3500 Models                                  | 5.5 Gallons | 21 Liters   |
| Diesel Exhaust Fluid Tank (Approximate) – Chassis Cab                                       | 9 Gallons   | 34 Liters   |
| <b>Engine Oil With Filter</b>                                                               |             |             |
| 6.7L Turbo Diesel Engine                                                                    | 12 Quarts   | 11.4 Liters |
| <b>Cooling System</b>                                                                       |             |             |
| 6.7L Turbo Diesel Engine (Mopar Engine Coolant/Antifreeze 10 Year/<br>150,000 Mile Formula) | 5.7 Gallons | 21.4 Liters |



## FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS — GAS ENGINE

### Engine

| Component                       | Fluid, Lubricant, or Genuine Part                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Engine Coolant                  | We recommend you use Mopar Antifreeze/Coolant 10-Year/150,000 Mile Formula OAT (Organic Additive Technology).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Engine Oil – 6.4L Engine        | For best performance and maximum protection under all types of operating conditions, the manufacturer only recommends full synthetic engine oils that meet the American Petroleum Institute (API) categories of SN. The manufacturer recommends the use of Pennzoil Ultra 0W-40 or equivalent Mopar engine oil meeting the requirements of FCA Material Standard MS-12633 for use in all operating temperatures. |
| Engine Oil Filter – 6.4L Engine | We recommend you use Mopar Engine Oil Filters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Spark Plugs – 6.4L Engine       | We recommend you use Mopar Spark Plugs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Fuel Selection – 6.4L Engine    | 89 Octane Recommended - 87 Octane Acceptable, 0-15% Ethanol.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

#### CAUTION!

- Mixing of engine coolant (antifreeze) other than specified Organic Additive Technology (OAT) engine coolant (antifreeze), may result in engine damage and may decrease corrosion protection. Organic Additive Technology (OAT) engine coolant is different and should not be mixed with Hybrid Organic Additive Technology (HOAT) engine coolant (antifreeze) or any “globally compatible”

#### CAUTION!

- coolant (antifreeze). If a non-OAT engine coolant (antifreeze) is introduced into the cooling system in an emergency, the cooling system will need to be drained, flushed, and refilled with fresh OAT coolant (conforming to MS.90032), by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
- Do not use water alone or alcohol-based engine coolant (antifreeze) products. Do not use additional rust inhibitors or an-

#### CAUTION!

- tirust products, as they may not be compatible with the radiator engine coolant and may plug the radiator.
- This vehicle has not been designed for use with propylene glycol-based engine coolant (antifreeze). Use of propylene glycol-based engine coolant (antifreeze) is not recommended.

## Chassis

| Component                                                                                                 | Fluid, Lubricant, or Genuine Part                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Automatic Transmission (6.4L Engine with 66RFE Transmission) (For Diesel Engine See Diesel Section Below) | Use only ATF+4 Automatic Transmission Fluid. Failure to use ATF+4 fluid may affect the function or performance of your transmission. We recommend Mopar ATF+4 fluid. |
| Automatic Transmission (6.4L Engine with AS66RC Transmission)                                             | Use only Mopar ASRC Automatic Transmission Fluid or equivalent. Failure to use the proper fluid may affect the function or performance of your transmission.         |
| Transfer Case                                                                                             | We recommend you use Mopar BW44-44 Transfer Case Fluid.                                                                                                              |
| Front and Rear Axle Fluid (4500/5500)                                                                     | We recommend you use GL-5 SAE 75W-90 Synthetic (MS-9763). Limited slip additive is not required for Limited-Slip Rear Axles.                                         |
| Brake Master Cylinder                                                                                     | We recommend you use Mopar DOT 3 and SAE J1703. If DOT 3 brake fluid is not available, then DOT 4 is acceptable.                                                     |
| Power Steering Reservoir                                                                                  | We recommend you use Mopar Power Steering Fluid +4, Mopar ATF+4 Automatic Transmission Fluid.                                                                        |

## FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS — 6.7L DIESEL ENGINES

### Engine

| Component         | Fluid, Lubricant, or Genuine Part                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Engine Coolant    | We recommend you use Mopar Antifreeze/Coolant 10 Year/150,000 Mile Formula OAT (Organic Additive Technology).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Engine Oil        | In ambient temperatures above 0°F (-18°C), we recommend you use 15W-40 engine oil such as Mopar, Shell Rotella and Shell Rimula that meets FCA Material Standard MS-10902 and the API CJ-4 engine oil category is required. Products meeting Cummins CES 20081 may also be used. The identification of these engine oils is typically located on the back of the oil container.<br>In ambient temperatures below 0°F (-18°C), we recommend you use 5W-40 <b>synthetic</b> engine oil such as Mopar, Shell Rotella and Shell Rimula that meets FCA Material Standard MS-10902 and the API CJ-4 engine oil category is required. |
| Engine Oil Filter | We recommend you use Mopar Engine Oil Filters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |



| Component                    | Fluid, Lubricant, or Genuine Part                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Fuel Filters                 | We recommend you use Mopar Fuel Filter. Must meet 3 micron rating. <b>Using a fuel filter that does not meet the manufacturers filtration and water separating requirements can severely impact fuel system life and reliability.</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Crankcase Ventilation Filter | We recommend you use Mopar CCV Filter.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Fuel Selection               | <p>Use good quality diesel fuel from a reputable supplier in your vehicle. Federal law requires that you must fuel this vehicle with Ultra Low Sulfur Highway Diesel fuel (15 ppm Sulfur maximum) and prohibits the use of Low Sulfur Highway Diesel fuel (500 ppm Sulfur maximum) to avoid damage to the emissions control system.</p> <p>For most year-round service, No. 2 diesel fuel meeting ASTM specification D-975 Grade S15 will provide good performance.</p> <p>If climatized or diesel Number 1 ULSD fuel is not available, and you are operating below (20°F/-6°C), in sustained arctic conditions, Mopar Premium Diesel Fuel Treatment (or equivalent) is recommended to avoid gelling.</p> <p><b>This vehicle is fully compatible with biodiesel blends up to 5% biodiesel meeting ASTM specification D-975.</b> Pickup models, and Chassis Cab models configured with optional B20 capability, are additionally compatible with 20% biodiesel meeting ASTM specification D-7467.</p> |
| Diesel Exhaust Fluid         | Mopar Diesel Exhaust Fluid (API Certified) (DEF) or equivalent that has been API Certified to the ISO 22241 standard. Use of fluids not API Certified to ISO 22241 may result in system damage. You can receive assistance in locating DEF in the United States by calling 866-RAM-INFO (866-726-4636). In Canada call 1-800-465-2001 (English) or 1-800-387-9983 (French).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

## Chassis

| Component                                                                                                                    | Fluid, Lubricant, or Genuine Part                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Automatic Transmission – If Equipped 6.7L Diesel with (Six-Speed 68RFE) – 2500/3500 Pickup models without PTO                | Only use ATF+4 Automatic Transmission Fluid. Failure to use ATF+4 fluid may affect the function or performance of your transmission. We recommend Mopar ATF+4 fluid. |
| Automatic Transmission – If Equipped 6.7L Diesel with (Six-Speed AS69RC) – Pickup models with PTO and All Chassis Cab models | Only use Mopar ASRC Automatic Transmission Fluid or equivalent. Failure to use the proper fluid may affect the function or performance of your transmission.         |
| Transfer Case                                                                                                                | We recommend you use Mopar BW44–44 Transfer Case Fluid.                                                                                                              |
| Front and Rear Axle Fluid (2500/3500)                                                                                        | We recommend you use SAE 75W-85 HD Ram GL-5 Synthetic Axle Lubricant. Limited slip additive is not required for Limited-Slip Rear Axles.                             |
| Front and Rear Axle Fluid (4500/5500)                                                                                        | We recommend you use GL-5 SAE 75W-90 Synthetic (MS-9763). Limited slip additive is not required for Limited-Slip Rear Axles.                                         |
| Clutch Linkage                                                                                                               | We recommend you use Mopar Multi-Purpose Grease, NLGI Grade 2 E.P. or equivalent.                                                                                    |
| Manual Transmission (G-56) – If Equipped                                                                                     | We recommend you use Mopar ATF+4 Automatic Transmission Fluid or equivalent licensed ATF+4 product.                                                                  |



## MOPAR ACCESSORIES

### Authentic Accessories By Mopar

- In choosing Authentic Accessories you gain far more than expressive style, premium protection, or extreme entertainment, you also benefit from enhancing your vehicle with accessories that have been thoroughly tested and factory-approved.

#### EXTERIOR:

- Tubular Side Steps
- Running Boards

#### INTERIOR:

- Premium Carpet Mats
- DOT Certified Emergency Kit

#### ELECTRONICS:

- Trailer Brake Module
- Electronic Vehicle Tracking

- The following highlights just some of the many Authentic Ram Accessories by Mopar featuring a fit, finish, and functionality specifically for your Ram.
- For the full line of Authentic Ram Accessories by Mopar, visit your local dealership or online at [mopar.com](http://mopar.com) for U.S. residents and [mopar.ca](http://mopar.ca) for Canadian residents.

- Stirrup Step
- Bodyside Moldings

- Door Sill Guards
- Slush Mats

- Wireless Charging Pad

#### NOTE:

All parts are subject to availability.

- Front Air Deflectors
- Side Window Deflectors

- Leather Seats

- Remote Start

# MULTIMEDIA

## CYBERSECURITY . . . . .215

## RADIO 3.0 . . . . .216

Clock Setting . . . . .217

Audio Setting . . . . .217

Radio Operation . . . . .217

Disc Operation — If Equipped . . . . .218

USB/Audio Jack (AUX) Manual

Operation . . . . .218

## UCONNECT 3.0 . . . . .219

Clock Setting . . . . .220

Audio Setting . . . . .220

Radio Operation . . . . .220

Disc Operation — If Equipped . . . . .221

USB/Audio Jack (AUX) Manual

Operation . . . . .221

## UCONNECT 3 WITH 5-INCH DISPLAY. .222

Controls On The Front Panel . . . . .222

Clock Setting . . . . .223

Equalizer, Balance And Fade . . . . .223

Radio Mode . . . . .224

Media Mode . . . . .225

Bluetooth Source . . . . .227

## UCONNECT 4C/4C NAV WITH 8.4-INCH DISPLAY . . . . .229

Uconnect 4C/4C NAV At A Glance . . . . .229

Drag & Drop Menu Bar . . . . .230

Radio . . . . .231

Android Auto — If Equipped . . . . .232

Apple CarPlay Integration —

If Equipped . . . . .236

## SIRIUSXM GUARDIAN — IF EQUIPPED . . . . .238

SiriusXM Guardian — If Equipped  
(Available on Uconnect 4C/4C NAV With  
8.4-inch Display) . . . . .238

SiriusXM Guardian Activation . . . . .239

Download The Uconnect App . . . . .240

Renewing Subscriptions (Uconnect  
4C/4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display). . . . .240

Maintaining Your SiriusXM Guardian

Account . . . . .241

Built-In Features . . . . .241

SiriusXM Guardian Remote Features . . . . .244

## UCONNECT SETTINGS . . . . .246

## TIPS CONTROLS AND GENERAL INFORMATION . . . . .247

Steering Wheel Audio Controls . . . . .247

Reception Conditions . . . . .247

Care And Maintenance . . . . .247

Anti-Theft Protection . . . . .247

## IPOD/USB/MEDIA PLAYER CONTROL . . . . .247

Audio Jack (AUX) . . . . .248

USB Port . . . . .248

Bluetooth Streaming Audio . . . . .248

## NAVIGATION — IF EQUIPPED . . . . .248

Changing The Navigation Voice Prompt  
Volume . . . . .248

Finding Points Of Interest . . . . .250

Finding A Place By Spelling  
The Name. . . . .250

One-Step Voice Destination Entry . . . . .250

Setting Your Home Location . . . . .250

Home . . . . .250

Adding A Stop . . . . .252



|                                                                                    |            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| SiriusXM Traffic Plus (4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display) . . . . .                     | 252        |
| SiriusXM Travel Link (4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display) . . . . .                      | 252        |
| <b>UCONNECT PHONE . . . . .</b>                                                    | <b>253</b> |
| Uconnect Phone (Bluetooth Hands Free Calling) . . . . .                            | 253        |
| Pairing (Wirelessly Connecting) Your Mobile Phone To The Uconnect System . . . . . | 255        |
| Common Phone Commands (Examples) . . . . .                                         | 258        |
| Mute (Or Unmute) Microphone During Call . . . . .                                  | 258        |
| Transfer Ongoing Call Between Handset And Vehicle . . . . .                        | 258        |
| Phonebook . . . . .                                                                | 258        |

|                                                                                                        |            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| Voice Command Tips . . . . .                                                                           | 259        |
| Changing The Volume. . . . .                                                                           | 259        |
| Using Do Not Disturb. . . . .                                                                          | 259        |
| Incoming Text Messages . . . . .                                                                       | 259        |
| Helpful Tips And Common Questions To Improve Bluetooth Performance With Your Uconnect System . . . . . | 260        |
| <b>UCONNECT VOICE RECOGNITION QUICK TIPS . . . . .</b>                                                 | <b>261</b> |
| Introducing Uconnect . . . . .                                                                         | 261        |
| Get Started . . . . .                                                                                  | 261        |
| Basic Voice Commands. . . . .                                                                          | 262        |
| Radio . . . . .                                                                                        | 263        |
| Media . . . . .                                                                                        | 263        |
| Phone . . . . .                                                                                        | 264        |
| Voice Text Reply . . . . .                                                                             | 265        |

|                                                    |     |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Climate (4C/4C NAV) . . . . .                      | 266 |
| Navigation (4C NAV) . . . . .                      | 266 |
| SiriusXM Guardian (4C/4C NAV)—If Equipped. . . . . | 267 |
| Register (4C/4C NAV). . . . .                      | 267 |
| Vehicle Health Report/Alert (4C/4C NAV) . . . . .  | 267 |
| Mobile App (4C/4C NAV). . . . .                    | 268 |
| SiriusXM Travel Link (4C NAV) . . . . .            | 268 |
| Siri Eyes Free — If Equipped . . . . .             | 269 |
| Do Not Disturb. . . . .                            | 269 |
| Android Auto — If Equipped . . . . .               | 269 |
| Apple CarPlay — If Equipped . . . . .              | 270 |
| General Information. . . . .                       | 271 |
| Additional Information . . . . .                   | 271 |

## CYBERSECURITY

Your vehicle may be a connected vehicle and may be equipped with both wired and wireless networks. These networks allow your vehicle to send and receive information. This information allows systems and features in your vehicle to function properly.

Your vehicle may be equipped with certain security features to reduce the risk of unauthorized and unlawful access to vehicle systems and wireless communications. Vehicle software technology continues to evolve over time and FCA US LLC, working with its suppliers, evaluates and takes appropriate steps as needed. Similar to a computer or other devices, your vehicle may require software updates to improve the usability and performance of your systems or to reduce the potential risk of unauthorized and unlawful access to your vehicle systems.

The risk of unauthorized and unlawful access to your vehicle systems may still exist, even if the most recent version of vehicle software (such as Uconnect software) is installed.

### WARNING!

- It is not possible to know or to predict all of the possible outcomes if your vehicle's systems are breached. It may be possible that vehicle systems, including safety related systems, could be impaired or a loss of vehicle control could occur that may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.
- ONLY insert media (e.g., USB, SD card, or CD) into your vehicle if it came from a trusted source. Media of unknown origin could possibly contain malicious software, and if installed in your vehicle, it may increase the possibility for vehicle systems to be breached.
- As always, if you experience unusual vehicle behavior, take your vehicle to your nearest authorized dealer immediately.

### NOTE:

- FCA US LLC or your dealer may contact you directly regarding software updates.

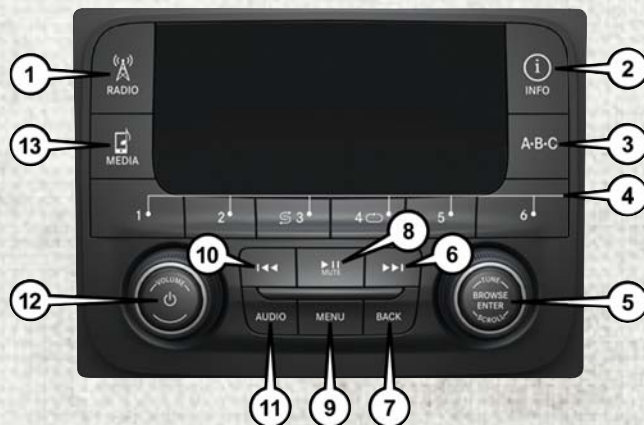
- To help further improve vehicle security and minimize the potential risk of a security breach, vehicle owners should:

- Routinely check [www.driveuconnect.com/support/software-update.html](http://www.driveuconnect.com/support/software-update.html) (U.S. Residents) or [www.driveuconnect.ca](http://www.driveuconnect.ca) (Canadian Residents) to learn about available Uconnect software updates.
- Only connect and use trusted media devices (e.g. personal mobile phones, USBs, CDs).

Privacy of any wireless and wired communications cannot be assured. Third parties may unlawfully intercept information and private communications without your consent. For further information, refer to "Data Collection & Privacy" in your Uconnect Owners Manual Supplement or "Onboard Diagnostic System (OBD II) Cybersecurity" in "Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel" in your Owner's Manual .



## RADIO 3.0



Radio 3.0

- 1 — RADIO Button
- 2 — INFO Button
- 3 — A-B-C Button
- 4 — Preset Buttons

- 5 — BROWSE/ENTER Button — TUNE/SCROLL Knob
- 6 — SEEK Up Button
- 7 — BACK Button
- 8 — Play/Pause — MUTE Button

- 9 — MENU Button
- 10 — SEEK Down Button
- 11 — AUDIO Button
- 12 — ON/OFF Button — VOLUME Knob
- 13 — MEDIA Button

## Clock Setting

1. Push the Menu button at the bottom of the radio, and push the Enter/Browse button for System Settings. Next, select the Time and Format setting and then select Set Time by pushing the Enter/Browse button.
2. Adjust the hours or minutes by turning the Tune/Scroll knob, then pushing the Enter/Browse button to move to the next entry. You can also select 12hr or 24hr format by turning the Tune/Scroll knob, then pushing the Enter/Browse button on the desired selection.
3. Once the time is set, press the "Ok" button to exit the time screen.

## Audio Setting

- Push the AUDIO button on the radio faceplate.
- The Audio Menu shows the following options for you to customize your audio settings.

### Treble, Mid, Bass, Fade, Balance, Speed Adjusted Volume, Loudness and AUX Offset

- Select the desired setting to adjust, then push the ENTER/BROWSE button. Turn the TUNE/SCROLL knob to adjust the setting + or - . Push the "Back" button when done.

## Radio Operation

### Seek Up/Down Buttons

- Push the up or down button to seek through radio stations in AM, FM or SXM bands.
- Hold either button to bypass stations without stopping.

### Store Radio Presets Manually

The presets are available for all Radio Modes, and are activated by pushing any of the six preset buttons. The Radio stores up to 18 presets in each of the Radio modes. Push the A-B-C button on the faceplate to select the A, B, or C preset list.

To store a radio preset manually, follow the steps below:

1. Tune to the desired station.
2. Push and hold the desired numbered button for more than two seconds, or until you hear a confirmation beep.



## Disc Operation — If Equipped

Your vehicle may have a remote CD player located in the lower center console storage bin, or in the lower center bench seat bin.

- CD/Disc Mode is entered by either inserting a CD/Disc or by pushing the MEDIA button located on the side of the display. Once in Media Mode, select “Disc.”

Gently insert one CD into the CD player with the CD label facing as indicated on the illustration located on the Disc player.

### Seek Up/Down Buttons

- Push to seek through CD tracks.
- Hold either button to bypass tracks without stopping.

## USB/Audio Jack (AUX) Manual Operation

To select a specific audio source, push the MEDIA button on the faceplate and select from the following modes:

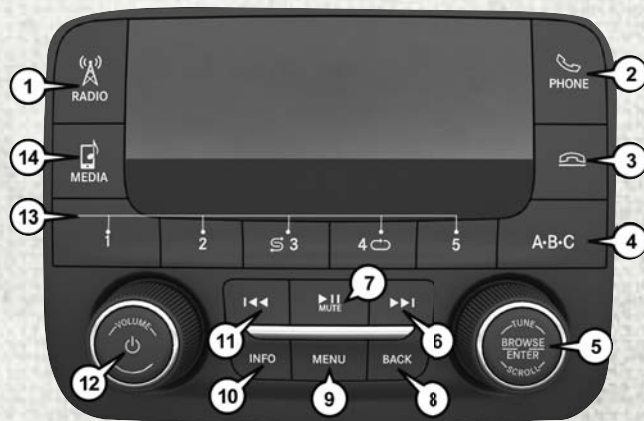
### USB/iPod

- USB/iPod Mode is entered by either inserting a USB Jump Drive or iPod cable into the USB port or by pushing the MEDIA button located left of the display.

### Audio Jack (AUX)

- The AUX allows a device such as an MP3 player or an iPod to be plugged into the radio and utilize the vehicle's audio system, using a 3.5 mm audio cable, to amplify the source and play through the vehicle's speakers.
- The functions of the device are controlled using the device buttons, not the buttons on the radio. The volume may be controlled using the radio or the device.

## UCONNECT 3.0



**Uconnect 3.0 Radio**

1 — RADIO Button  
 2 — PHONE Pick-Up Button  
 3 — Phone Hang-Up Button  
 4 — A-B-C Button  
 5 — BROWSE/ENTER Button — TUNE/  
 SCROLL Knob

6 — SEEK Up Button  
 7 — Play/Pause — MUTE Button  
 8 — BACK Button  
 9 — MENU Button  
 10 — INFO Button  
 11 — SEEK Down Button

12 — ON/OFF Button — VOLUME Knob  
 13 — Preset Buttons  
 14 — MEDIA Button



## Clock Setting

1. Push the Menu button at the bottom of the radio, and push the Enter/Browse button for System Settings. Next, select the Time and Format setting and then select Set Time by pushing the Enter/Browse button.
2. Adjust the hours or minutes by turning the Tune/Scroll knob, then pushing the Enter/Browse button to move to the next entry. You can also select 12hr or 24hr format by turning the Tune/Scroll knob, then pushing the Enter/Browse button on the desired selection.
3. Once the time is set, press the “Ok” button to exit the time screen.

## Audio Setting

- Push the AUDIO button on the radio faceplate.
- The Audio Menu shows the following options for you to customize your audio settings.

### **Treble, Mid, Bass, Fade, Balance, Speed Adjusted Volume, Loudness and AUX Offset**

- Select the desired setting to adjust, then push the ENTER/BROWSE button. Turn the TUNE/SCROLL knob to adjust the setting + or - . Push the “Back” button when done.

## Radio Operation

### **Seek Up/Down Buttons**

- Push the up or down button to seek through radio stations in AM, FM or SXM bands.
- Hold either button to bypass stations without stopping.

## Store Radio Presets Manually

The presets are available for all Radio Modes, and are activated by pushing any of the six preset buttons. The Radio stores up to 18 presets in each of the Radio modes. Push the A-B-C button on the faceplate to select the A, B, or C preset list.

To store a radio preset manually, follow the steps below:

1. Tune to the desired station.
2. Push and hold the desired numbered button for more than two seconds, or until you hear a confirmation beep.

## Disc Operation — If Equipped

Your vehicle may have a remote CD player located in the lower center console storage bin, or in the lower center bench seat bin.

- CD/Disc Mode is entered by either inserting a CD/Disc or by pushing the MEDIA button located on the side of the display. Once in Media Mode, select “Disc.”

Gently insert one CD into the CD player with the CD label facing as indicated on the illustration located on the Disc player.

### Seek Up/Down Buttons

- Push to seek through CD tracks.
- Hold either button to bypass tracks without stopping.

## USB/Audio Jack (AUX) Manual Operation

To select a specific audio source, push the MEDIA button on the faceplate and select from the following modes:

### USB/iPod

- USB/iPod Mode is entered by either inserting a USB Jump Drive or iPod cable into the USB port or by pushing the MEDIA button located left of the display.

### Audio Jack (AUX)

- The AUX allows a device such as an MP3 player or an iPod to be plugged into the radio and utilize the vehicle's audio system, using a 3.5 mm audio cable, to amplify the source and play through the vehicle's speakers.
- The functions of the device are controlled using the device buttons, not the buttons on the radio. The volume may be controlled using the radio or the device.



## Uconnect 3 WITH 5-INCH DISPLAY

### Controls On The Front Panel



**Uconnect 3 With 5-inch Display Radio**

- 1 — RADIO Button
- 2 — COMPASS Button
- 3 — SETTINGS Button
- 4 — MORE Button

- 5 — BROWSE/ENTER — Tune/Scroll Knob
- 6 — BACK Button
- 7 — SCREEN OFF Button
- 8 — Mute Button — VOLUME Control

- 9 — Uconnect PHONE Button
- 10 — MEDIA Button

## Clock Setting

To start the clock setting procedure:

1. Push the MORE button on the faceplate. Next press the “Settings” button on the touchscreen and then press the “Clock and Date” button on the touchscreen.
2. Press the “Set Time” button on the touchscreen.
3. Press the “Up” or “Down” arrows to adjust the hours or minutes, next select the “AM” or “PM” button on the touchscreen. You can also select 12hr or 24hr format by pressing the desired button on the touchscreen.
4. Once the time is set press the “Done” button on the touchscreen to exit the time screen.

### NOTE:

In the Clock Setting Menu you can also select the “Show Time Status” button on the touchscreen, then select from “On” or “Off” to display the time in the status bar.

## Equalizer, Balance And Fade

1. Push the MORE button on the faceplate. Next press the “Settings” button on the touchscreen.
2. Then scroll down and press the “Audio” button on the touchscreen to get to the Audio menu.
3. The Audio Menu shows the following options for you to customize your audio settings.

### Equalizer

Press the “Equalizer” button on the touchscreen to adjust the Bass, Mid and Treble. Use the “+” or “-” button on the touchscreen to adjust the equalizer to your desired settings. Press the “Back Arrow” button on the touchscreen when done.

### Balance/Fade

Press the “Balance/Fade” button on the touchscreen to adjust the sound from the speakers. Use the arrow button on the touchscreen to adjust the sound level from the front and rear or right and left side speakers. Press the Center “C” button on the touch-

screen to reset the balance and fade to the factory setting. Press the “Back Arrow” button on the touchscreen when done.

### Speed Adjusted Volume

Press the “Speed Adjusted Volume” button on the touchscreen to select between OFF, 1, 2 or 3. This will decrease the radio volume relative to a decrease in vehicle speed. Press the “Back Arrow” button on the touchscreen when done.

### Loudness

Press the “Loudness” button on the touchscreen to select the Loudness feature. When this feature is activated it improves sound quality at lower volumes.

### Surround Sound

Press the “Surround Sound” button on the touchscreen, select “On” or “Off” followed by pressing the “Back Arrow” button on the touchscreen. When this feature is activated, it provides simulated surround sound mode.



## Radio Mode



### Uconnect 3 With 5-inch Display Radio

- 1 — Radio Station Presets
- 2 — Show All Presets
- 3 — Seek Up
- 4 — Audio Settings
- 5 — Station Info
- 6 — Direct Tune
- 7 — Radio Band
- 8 — Seek Down

### Seek Previous/Next Buttons

#### Seek Up ►►

Press and release the “Seek Up” ►► button on the touchscreen to tune the radio to the next listenable station or channel.

During a Seek Up function, if the radio reaches the starting station after passing through the entire band two times, the radio will stop at the station where it began.

#### Fast Seek Up ►►►

Press and hold the “Seek Up” ►►► button on the touchscreen to advance the radio through the available stations or channels at a faster rate, the radio stops at the next available station or channel when the button on the touchscreen is released.

#### Seek Down ◀◀

Press and release the “Seek Down” ◀◀ button on the touchscreen to tune the radio to the next listenable station or channel.

During a Seek Down function, if the radio reaches the starting station after passing through the entire band two times, the radio will stop at the station where it began.

### Fast Seek Down ◀◀◀

Press and hold the “Seek Down” ◀◀◀ button on the touchscreen to advance the radio through the available stations or channel at a faster rate, the radio stops at the next available station or channel when the button on the touchscreen is released.

### Store Radio Presets

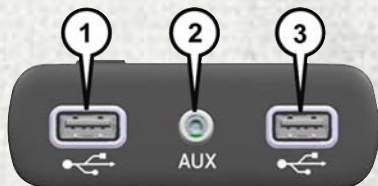
The Radio stores up to 12 presets in each of the Radio modes. There are four visible presets at the top of the radio screen. Pressing the “All” button on the touchscreen on the radio home screen will display all of the preset stations for that mode.

To store a radio preset manually, follow the steps below:

1. Tune to the desired station.
2. Press and hold the desired numbered button on the touchscreen for more than two seconds or until you hear a confirmation beep.

## Media Mode

### Audio Source Selection



#### Uconnect Media Hub

- 1 — USB Port One
- 2 — Audio/AUX Jack
- 3 — USB Port Two



#### Uconnect Media Mode

- |                             |                |
|-----------------------------|----------------|
| 1 — SEEK<br>Down            | 4 — Info       |
| 2 — SEEK Up                 | 5 — Pause/Play |
| 3 — Additional<br>Functions | 6 — Source     |
|                             | 7 — Browse     |

Media Mode is entered by pushing the MEDIA button located on the faceplate. Once in Media Mode, press the “Source” button on the touchscreen and the desired mode button on the touchscreen. Disc (if equipped), USB, AUX, and Bluetooth (if equipped), are the Media sources available. When available, you can select the “Browse” button on the touchscreen to be given these options:

- Now Playing
- Artists
- Albums
- Genres
- Songs
- Playlists
- Folders

#### Source

Press the “Source” button on the touchscreen to select the desired audio source: Disc (if equipped), USB, AUX and Bluetooth (if equipped). This screen will time out after a few seconds and return to the main radio screen if no selection is made.

You can press the “Source,” “Pause/Play” or the “Info” button on the touchscreen for artist information on the current song playing.

#### Disc Mode — If Equipped

Your vehicle may have a remote Disc player located in the center console storage bin.



Disc Mode is entered by either inserting a CD/Disc or by pushing the MEDIA button on the faceplate. Once in Media Mode, press the “Source” button on the touchscreen and select “Disc.”

### **Inserting Compact Disc**

Gently insert one disc into the disc player with the disc label following the illustration indicated on the player. The disc automatically pulls into the disc player and the disc icon illuminates on the radio display. If a disc does not go into the slot more than 1 inch (2.5 cm), a disc may already be loaded and must be ejected before a new disc can be loaded.

If you insert a disc with the ignition ON and the radio ON, the unit will switch to disc mode and begin to play when you insert the disc. The display will show the track number and index time in minutes and seconds. Play will begin at the start of track one.

### **Browse**

Press the “Browse” button on the touchscreen to scroll through and select a desired track on the Disc. Press the “Exit” button on

the touchscreen if you wish to cancel the browse function.

### **Eject Button — Ejecting a Disc**

Push the eject button to eject the disc. If you have ejected a disc and have not removed it within ten seconds, it will be reloaded. If the Disc is not removed, the radio will reinsert the disc but will not play it.

A disc can be ejected with the radio and ignition OFF.

### **USB/iPod Mode**

USB/iPod Mode is entered by either inserting a USB Jump Drive or iPod cable into the USB port, or by pushing the MEDIA button located on the faceplate. Once in Media Mode, press the “Source” button on the touchscreen and select “USB/iPod.”

### **Inserting USB/iPod Device**

Gently insert the USB/iPod device into the USB Port. If you insert a USB/iPod device with the ignition ON, the unit will switch to USB/iPod mode and begin to play when you insert the device. The display will show the track

number and index time in minutes and seconds. Play will begin at the start of track one.

### **Browse**

Press the “Browse” button on the touchscreen to select Artist, Albums, Genres, Songs, Playlists or Folders from the USB/iPod device. Once the desired selection is made you can choose from the available media by pressing the button on the touchscreen. Press the “Exit” button on the touchscreen if you wish to cancel the browse function.

### **AUX Mode**

AUX Mode is entered by inserting a AUX device using a stereo cable with a 3.5 mm audio jack into the AUX port, or by pushing the MEDIA button located on the faceplate. Once in Media Mode, press the “Source” button on the touchscreen and select “AUX.”

### **Inserting Auxiliary Device**

Gently insert the Auxiliary device cable into the AUX Port. If you insert a Auxiliary device with the ignition ON, the unit will switch to AUX mode and begin to play when you insert the device cable.

## Controlling The Auxiliary Device

The control of the Auxiliary device (e.g., selecting playlists, play, fast forward, etc.) cannot be provided by the radio; use the device controls instead. Adjust the volume with the VOLUME/MUTE rotary knob, or with the volume of the attached device.

The radio unit is acting as the amplifier for audio output from the Auxiliary device. Therefore if the volume control on the Auxiliary device is set too low, there will be insufficient audio signal for the radio unit to play the music on the device.

## Track Selection

### Seek Up ►►/Seek Down ◀◀

Press and release the “Right Arrow” ►► button on the touchscreen for the next selection. Press and release the “Left Arrow” ◀◀ button on the touchscreen to return to the beginning of the current selection, or return to the beginning of the previous selection if the Disc is within the first second of the current selection.

### Fast Seek Up ►►

Press and hold the “Right Arrow” ►► button on the touchscreen and the desired mode will begin to fast forward through the current track until the button on the touchscreen is released.

### Fast Seek Down ◀◀

Press and hold the “Left Arrow” ◀◀ button on the touchscreen and the desired mode will begin to rewind through the current track until the button on the touchscreen is released.

## Info

Press the “Info” button on the touchscreen to display the current track information. Press the “X” button on the touchscreen to cancel this feature.

## Shuffle

Press the “Shuffle” button on the touchscreen to play the selections on the USB/iPod device in random order to provide an interesting change of pace. Press the “Shuffle” button on the touchscreen a second time to turn this feature off.

## Repeat

Press the “Repeat” button on the touchscreen to repeat the song selection. To cancel repeat, press the “Repeat” button on the touchscreen a second time.

## Bluetooth Source

Bluetooth Streaming Audio (BTSA) or Bluetooth Mode is entered by pairing a Bluetooth device containing music to the Uconnect system.

Before proceeding, the Bluetooth device must be paired with the Uconnect Phone to communicate with the Uconnect system.

See the “Pairing Procedure” in this manual for further details.

Once the Bluetooth device is paired to the Uconnect system, push the MEDIA button located on the faceplate. Once in Media Mode, press the “Source” button on the touchscreen and select “Bluetooth.”

## NOTE:

For mobile phone compatibility and pairing instructions, please visit [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com).



## Pairing A Bluetooth Audio Device

To begin using your audio device, you must pair your compatible Bluetooth enabled audio device. Pairing is the process of establishing a wireless connection between a device and the Uconnect system.

### NOTE:

- You must have Bluetooth enabled on your device to complete this procedure.
  - The vehicle must be in PARK.
1. Place the ignition in the ACC or ON position.
  2. Push the PHONE button on the faceplate.
    - If there is no devices currently connected with the system, a pop-up will appear asking if you would like to pair a device.
  3. Select “Yes” to begin the pairing process.

4. Search for available devices on your Bluetooth enabled device.

- Select Bluetooth and ensure it is enabled. Once enabled, the device will begin to search for Bluetooth connections.

5. If No is selected, and you still would like to pair a device, press the “Settings” button from the Uconnect Phone main screen.

- Select “Paired Phones” then press the “Add Device” button on the touchscreen.
- Search for available devices on your Bluetooth enabled device (see below). When prompted on the device, select “Uconnect” and accept the connection request.

6. Uconnect Phone will display an in progress screen while the system is connecting.

7. When your device finds the Uconnect system, select “Uconnect.”

8. When prompted on the device, accept the connection request from Uconnect Phone.

### NOTE:

Some devices will require you to enter the PIN number.

9. When the pairing process has successfully completed, the system will prompt you to choose whether or not this is your favorite device. Selecting “Yes” will make this device the highest priority. This device will take precedence over other paired devices within range and will connect to the Uconnect system automatically when entering the vehicle. Only one Bluetooth device can be connected to the Uconnect system at a time. If “No” is selected, simply select “Uconnect” from the device Bluetooth screen, and the Uconnect system will reconnect to the Bluetooth device.

## UCONNECT 4C/4C NAV WITH 8.4-INCH DISPLAY

### Uconnect 4C/4C NAV At A Glance



Uconnect 4C/4C NAV Radio Screen

#### WARNING!

ALWAYS drive safely with your hands on the wheel. You have full responsibility and assume all risks related to the use of the Uconnect features, SiriusXM Guardian services, and applications in this vehicle. Only use Uconnect features and SiriusXM Guardian services when it is safe to do so.

#### WARNING!

Failure to do so may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.

#### CAUTION!

Do NOT attach any object to the touchscreen, doing so can result in damage to the screen.

#### NOTE:

Uconnect screen images are for illustration purposes only and may not reflect exact software for your vehicle.

#### Setting The Time

- Model 4C NAV synchronizes time automatically via GPS, so it should not require any time adjustment. If you do need to set the time manually, follow the instructions below for Model 4C NAV.
- For Model 4C, turn the unit on, and then press the time display at the top of the screen. Press “Yes.”

- If the time is not displayed at the top of the screen, press the “Settings” button on the touchscreen. In the Settings screen, press the “Clock” button on the touchscreen, then check or uncheck this option.

- Press “+” or “-” next to Set Time Hours and Set Time Minutes to adjust the time.

- If these features are not available, uncheck the Sync Time box.

- Press “X” to save your settings and exit out of the Clock Setting screen.

#### Background Themes

- Screen background themes are selectable from a pre-loaded list of themes. If you'd like to set a theme, follow the instructions below.
- Press the “Settings” button on the touchscreen and select the display menu.
- Then press “Set Theme” button on the touchscreen and select a theme.



## Audio Settings

- Press the “Audio” button on the touchscreen to activate the Audio settings screen to adjust Balance/Fade, Equalizer, and Speed Adjusted Volume.
- You can return to the Radio screen by pressing the “X” located at the top right.

## Balance/Fade

- Press the “Balance/Fade” button on the touchscreen to Balance audio between the front speakers or fade the audio between the rear and front speakers.
- Pressing the “Front,” “Rear,” “Left,” or “Right” buttons on the touchscreen or press and drag the Speaker Icon to adjust the Balance/Fade.

## Equalizer

- Press the “Equalizer” button on the touchscreen to activate the Equalizer screen.
- Press the “+” or “-” buttons on the touchscreen, or press and drag over the level bar for each of the equalizer bands. The level value, which spans between plus or minus nine, is displayed at the bottom of each of the Bands.

## Speed Adjusted Volume

- Press the “Speed Adjusted Volume” button on the touchscreen to activate the Speed Adjusted Volume screen. The Speed Adjusted Volume is adjusted by pressing the volume level indicator. This alters the automatic adjustment of the audio volume with variation to vehicle speed.

## Drag & Drop Menu Bar

The Uconnect features and services in the main menu bar are easily changed for your convenience. Simply follow these steps:



**Uconnect 4C/4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display Main Menu**

1. Press the “Apps”  button to open the App screen.
2. Press and hold, then drag the selected App to replace an existing shortcut in the main menu bar.

The new app shortcut, that was dragged down onto the main menu bar, will now be an active App/shortcut.

## NOTE:

This feature is only available if the vehicle is in PARK.

## Radio



Uconnect 4C NAV Radio

- 1 — Radio Station Presets
- 2 — Toggle Between Presets
- 3 — Status Bar
- 4 — View Small Navigation Map

- 5 — HD Radio
- 6 — Main Category Bar
- 7 — Audio Settings
- 8 — Seek Up

- 9 — Direct Tune To A Radio Station
- 10 — Seek Down
- 11 — Browse And Manage Presets
- 12 — Radio Bands

**WARNING!**

ALWAYS drive safely with your hands on the wheel. You have full responsibility and assume all risks related to the use of the Uconnect features, SiriusXM Guardian services, and applications in this vehicle. Only use Uconnect features and SiriusXM Guardian services when it is safe to do so. Failure to do so may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.

- To access the Radio mode, press the “Radio” button on the touchscreen.

**Selecting Radio Stations**

- Press the desired radio band (AM, FM or SXM) button on the touchscreen.

**Seek Up/Seek Down**

- Press the Seek up or down arrow buttons on the touchscreen for less than two seconds to seek through radio stations.
- Press and hold either arrow button on the touchscreen for more than two seconds to bypass stations without stopping. The radio

will stop at the next listenable station once the arrow button on the touchscreen is released.

**Direct Tune**

- Tune directly to a radio station by pressing the “Tune” button on the screen, and entering the desired station number.

**Store Radio Presets Manually**

Your radio can store 36 total preset stations, 12 presets per band (AM, FM and SXM). They are shown at the top of your radio screen. To see the 12 preset stations per band, press the arrow button on the touchscreen at the top right of the screen to toggle between the two sets of six presets.

To store a radio preset manually, follow the steps below:

1. Tune to the desired station.
2. Press and hold the desired numbered button on the touchscreen for more than two seconds or until you hear a confirmation beep.

**HD Radio — If Equipped**

- HD Radio (available on Uconnect 4C/4C NAV) operates similar to conventional radio except it allows broadcasters to transmit a high-quality digital signal.
- With an HD radio receiver, the listener is provided with a clear sound that enhances the listening experience. HD radio can also transmit data such as song title or artist.

**Android Auto — If Equipped****NOTE:**

Feature availability depends on your carrier and mobile phone manufacturer. Some Android Auto features may or may not be available in every region and/or language.

Android Auto is a feature of your Uconnect system, and your Android 5.0 Lollipop, or higher, powered smartphone with a data plan, that allows you to project your smartphone and a number of its apps onto the touchscreen radio display. Android Auto automatically brings you useful information, and organizes it into simple cards that appear just when they are needed. Android Auto can be used with Google's best-in-class speech

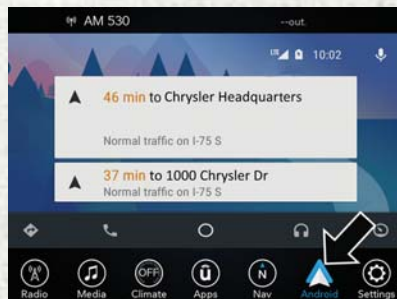
technology, the steering wheel controls, the knobs and buttons on your radio faceplate, and the radio display's touchscreen to control many of your apps. To use Android Auto follow these steps:

1. Download the Android Auto app from the Google Play store on your Android-powered smartphone.
2. Connect your Android powered smartphone to one of the media USB ports in your vehicle. If you have not downloaded the Android Auto app to your smartphone before plugging in the device for the first time, the app begins to download.

#### NOTE:

Be sure to use the factory-provided USB cable that came with your phone, as after-market cables may not work.

Your phone may ask you to approve the use of the Android Auto app before use.



#### Android Auto

3. Once Android Auto has made a connection through USB, Android Auto will also connect via Bluetooth. The system displays the Android Auto home screen. Android Auto automatically launches, but if it does not, refer to the Uconnect Owner's Manual Supplement for the procedure to enable the feature "AutoShow." You can also launch it by pressing Android Auto located in the "Apps" menu. If you use Android Auto frequently you can move the app to the menu bar at the bottom of

the touchscreen. Press the "Apps" button and locate the Android Auto app; then drag the selected App to replace an existing shortcut in the main menu bar.

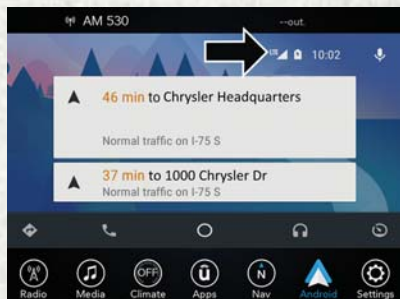
Once Android Auto is up and running on your Uconnect system, the following features can be utilized using your smartphone's data plan:

- Google Maps for navigation
- Google Play Music, Spotify, iHeart Radio, etc. for music
- Handsfree Calling, and Texting for communication
- Hundred of compatible apps, and many more!

#### NOTE:

To use Android Auto, make sure you are in an area with cellular coverage. Android Auto may use cellular data and your cellular coverage is shown in the upper right corner of the radio screen.





**Google Maps Data And Cellular Coverage**

#### NOTE:

Requires compatible smartphone running Android™ 5.0 Lollipop or higher and download app on Google Play. Android, Android Auto and Google Play are trademarks of Google Inc.

#### Maps

Push and hold the VR button on the steering wheel or tap the microphone icon to ask Google to take you to a desired destination by voice. You can also touch the Navigation icon in Android Auto to access Google Maps.

#### NOTE:

If the VR button is not held, and is only pushed, the native Uconnect VR will prompt you and any navigation command said will launch the native Uconnect navigation system.

While using Android Auto, Google Maps provides voice-guided:

- Navigation
- Live traffic information
- Lane guidance



**Google Maps**

#### NOTE:

If you are using the native Uconnect navigation system, and you try and start a new route using the Android Auto, via voice or any other method, a pop-up will appear asking if you would like to switch from Uconnect navigation to smartphone navigation. A pop-up will also appear, asking if you'd like to switch, if Android Auto is currently in use and you attempt to launch a native Uconnect route. Selecting "Yes" will switch the navigation type to the newly used method of navigation and a route will be planned for the new destination. If "No" is selected the navigation type will remain unchanged.

For further information, refer to [www.android.com/auto/](http://www.android.com/auto/).

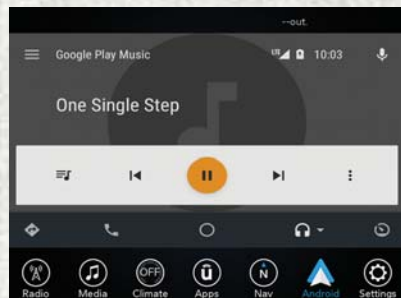
For further information on the navigation function, please refer to <https://support.google.com/android> or <https://support.google.com/androidauto/>.

## Music

Android Auto allows you to access and stream your favorite music with apps like Google Play Music, iHeartRadio, and Spotify. Using your smartphone's data plan, you can stream end-less music on the road.

### NOTE:

Music apps, playlists, and stations must be set up on your smartphone prior to using Android Auto, for them to work with Android Auto.



Android Auto Music

### NOTE:

To see the metadata for the music playing through Android Auto, select the Uconnect System's media screen.

For further information refer to <https://support.google.com/androidauto>.

## Communication

With Android Auto connected, press and hold the VR button on the steering wheel to activate voice recognition specific to the Android Auto. This will allow you to send and reply to text messages, have incoming text messages read out loud, and place and receive hands-free calls.



Android Auto Contact



Android Auto Phone

## Apps

The Android Auto App will display all the compatible apps that are available to use with Android Auto, every time it is launched. You must have the compatible app downloaded, and you must be signed in to the app for it to work with Android Auto. Refer to [g.co/androidauto](http://g.co/androidauto) to see the latest list of available apps for Android Auto.



## Apple CarPlay Integration — If Equipped

### NOTE:

Feature availability depends on your carrier and mobile phone manufacturer. Some Apple CarPlay features may or may not be available in every region and/or language.

Uconnect works seamlessly with Apple CarPlay, the smarter, more secure way to use your iPhone in the car, and stay focused on the road. Use your Uconnect Touchscreen display, the vehicle's knobs and controls, and your voice with Siri to get access to Apple Music, Maps, Messages, and more.

To use CarPlay, make sure you are using iPhone 5 or later, have Siri enabled in Settings, that your iPhone is unlocked for the very first connection only, and then use the following procedure:

1. Connect your iPhone to one of the media USB ports in your vehicle.

### NOTE:

Be sure to use the factory-provided Lightning cable that came with your phone, as aftermarket cables may not work.

2. Once the device is connected, the system displays the CarPlay home screen. Apple CarPlay automatically launches, but if not, refer to the Uconnect Owner's Manual Supplement for the procedure to enable the feature "AutoShow." You can also launch it by pressing the CarPlay icon located in the "Apps" menu. If you use Apple CarPlay frequently you can move the app to the menu bar at the bottom of the touchscreen. Press the "Apps" button and locate the CarPlay app; then drag and drop the selected App to replace an existing shortcut in the main menu bar.



CarPlay

Once CarPlay is up and running on your Uconnect system, the following features can be utilized using your iPhone's data plan:

- Phone
- Music
- Messages
- Maps

### NOTE:

To use CarPlay make sure that cellular data is turned on, and that you are in an area with cellular coverage. Your data and cellular coverage is shown on the left side of the radio screen.



**CarPlay Data And Cellular Coverage**

#### NOTE:

Requires compatible iPhone. See dealer for phone compatibility. Data plan rates apply. Vehicle user interface is a product of Apple®. Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc. iPhone is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries. Apple terms of use and privacy statements apply.

#### Phone

With CarPlay, press and hold the VR button on the steering wheel to activate a Siri voice recognition session. You can also press and hold the Home button within CarPlay to start

talking to Siri. This will allow you to make calls or listen to voice mail as you normally would using Siri on your iPhone.

#### NOTE:

Only temporarily pushing the VR button on the steering wheel will launch a native VR session, not a Siri session, and it will not function with CarPlay.

#### Music

CarPlay allows you to access all your artists, playlists, and music from iTunes. Using your iPhone's data plan, you can also use select third party audio apps including music, news, sports, podcasts and more.



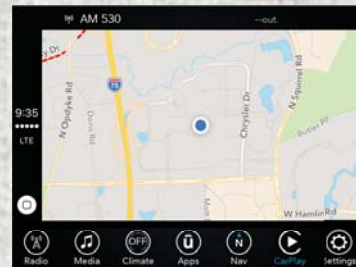
**Apple Music**

#### Messages

Just like Phone, CarPlay allows you to use Siri to send or reply to text messages. Siri can also read incoming text messages, but driver's will not be able to read messages, as everything is done via voice.

#### Maps

To use your Apple Maps for navigation on your Uconnect system, launch CarPlay, and push and hold the VR button on the steering wheel to use Siri to set your desired destination. Alternatively, choose a Nearby destination by pressing Destinations and selecting a category, by launching Siri from the destinations page, or even by typing in a destination.



**Maps**



**NOTE:**

- If the VR button is not held, and is only pushed, the native Uconnect VR will prompt you and any navigation command said will launch the native Uconnect navigation system.
- If you are using the native Uconnect navigation system, and you try and start a new route using CarPlay, via voice or any other method, a pop-up will appear asking if you would like to switch from Uconnect navigation to iPhone navigation. A pop-up will also appear, asking if you'd like to switch, if an CarPlay navigation is currently in use and you attempt to launch a native Uconnect route. Selecting "Yes" will switch the navigation type to the newly used method of navigation and a route will be planned for the new destination. If "No" is selected the navigation type will remain unchanged.

**Navigation Pop-Up****Apps**

To use a compatible app with CarPlay, you must have the compatible app downloaded, and you must be signed in to the app. Refer to <http://www.apple.com/ios/carplay/> (U.S. Residents) or <https://www.apple.com/ca/ios/carplay/> (Canadian Residents) to see the latest list of available apps for CarPlay.

**SIRIUSXM GUARDIAN — IF EQUIPPED**
**SiriusXM Guardian — If Equipped**  
**(Available on Uconnect 4C/4C**  
**NAV With 8.4-inch Display)**
**WARNING!**

ALWAYS obey traffic laws and pay attention to the road. ALWAYS drive safely with your hands on the steering wheel. You have full responsibility and assume all risks related to the use of the features and applications in this vehicle. Only use the features and applications when it is safe to do so. Failure to do so may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.

**NOTE:**

Your vehicle may be transmitting data as authorized by the subscriber.

SiriusXM Guardian enhances your ownership and driving experience. When connected to an operable network, you can:

- Place a SOS Call to a SiriusXM Guardian operator who can connect you to emergency responders.
- Remotely lock/unlock your doors and start your vehicle from virtually anywhere, using the Uconnect App from your device. You can also do so by logging into your owner site, or by calling SiriusXM Guardian Care when your vehicle has an operable network connection. Services can only be used where coverage is available.
- Receive text or email notifications if your vehicle's security alarm goes off.
- Receive stolen vehicle assistance, using GPS technology to help authorities locate your vehicle if it is stolen.
- Get operator assistance using the ASSIST button on your interior rearview mirror.

### **Before you drive, familiarize yourself with the easy-to-use SiriusXM Guardian services.**

1. The ASSIST and SOS Call buttons are located on your rearview mirror. The ASSIST button is used for contacting Roadside Assistance, Vehicle Care, SiriusXM Guardian Care, and Uconnect Care. The SOS Call button connects you to a SiriusXM Guardian Care Agent, who can connect you to emergency services.
2. The Uconnect “Apps  ” button is located in the center of the menu bar of the radio touchscreen. This is where you can manage your Apps.
3. The Uconnect Voice Command and Uconnect Phone buttons are located on the left side of your steering wheel. These buttons let you use your voice to give commands, make phone calls, send and receive text messages, enter navigation destinations, and control your radio and media devices.

### **Included Trial Period For New Vehicles**

Your new vehicle may come with an included trial period for use of the SiriusXM Guardian services starting at the date of vehicle purchase (date based on vehicle sales notification from your dealer). **To activate the trial, you must first register with SiriusXM Guardian.** After the trial period, if you wish to continue your SiriusXM Guardian services you can choose to purchase a subscription.

#### **NOTE:**

You can check [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com) for system and device compatibility.

### **SiriusXM Guardian Activation**

To unlock the full potential of SiriusXM Guardian in your vehicle, you must activate your SiriusXM Guardian services.

1. Press the Apps icon on the bottom of your in-vehicle touchscreen.
2. Select the Activate Services icon from your list of apps.



3. Select “Customer Care” to speak with a SiriusXM Guardian Customer Care agent who will activate services in your vehicle, or select “Enter Email” to activate on the web.

**Why sign up for SiriusXM Guardian?** Here are just a few examples of things you’ll be able to do:

- Know that help, if you need it, is only a button press away with Assist.
- Lock and unlock your vehicle doors from hundreds of miles away.
- Find your vehicle, no matter where you parked, using the convenient Vehicle Finder function.
- Use Send & Go to send a navigation route from your mobile phone to your vehicle’s navigation system.

For further information:

- U.S. residents visit:  
[www.siriusxm.com/guardian](http://www.siriusxm.com/guardian)
- Canadian residents visit:  
[www.siriusxm.ca/guardian](http://www.siriusxm.ca/guardian)

## Download The Uconnect App

You’re only a few steps away from using remote commands and other valuable services.



Mobile App

To use the Uconnect App:

- Search for and download the Uconnect App from the store on your compatible iPhone or Android powered device.

- Log in to the app using the email address and password you created when you activated the services.
- Press the “Remote” button on the bottom menu bar of the app to Lock/Unlock, Remote Start (if equipped), and activate your horn and lights remotely.
- Press the “Location” button on the bottom menu bar of the app to bring up a map to locate your vehicle or send a location to your vehicle’s navigation system.
- Press the menu button (three horizontal lines) in the upper left corner of the app to access settings and support information.

## Renewing Subscriptions (Uconnect 4C/4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display)

Subscriptions can be purchased online by logging into your owner account. If you need help push the ASSIST button on the rearview mirror, then select SiriusXM Guardian Care or:

- U.S. residents dial: 1-844-796-4827
- Canadian residents dial: 1-877-324-9091

## Maintaining Your SiriusXM Guardian Account

### Selling Your Vehicle

When you sell your vehicle, we recommend that you remove your SiriusXM Guardian Account information from the vehicle. You can do this by pressing the ASSIST button in your vehicle and selecting SiriusXM Guardian, or call:

- U.S. residents: 1-844-796-4827
- Canadian residents: 1-877-324-9091

### Built-In Features

#### WARNING!

ALWAYS drive safely with your hands on the wheel. You have full responsibility and assume all risks related to the use of the Uconnect features, SiriusXM Guardian services, and applications in this vehicle. Only use Uconnect features and SiriusXM Guardian services when it is safe to do so. Failure to do so may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.

#### WARNING!

- ALWAYS obey traffic laws and pay attention to the road. Some features are limited while the vehicle is in motion. Some services, including SOS, will NOT work without a subscription and an operable network connection.
- Ignoring the rearview mirror light could mean you may not have SOS Call service if needed. If the rearview mirror light is illuminated, have an authorized dealer service the SOS Call system immediately.
- The Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) turns on the Air Bag Warning Light on the instrument panel if a malfunction is detected in any part of the airbag system. If the Air Bag Warning Light is illuminated, the air bag system may not be working properly and the SOS Call system may not send a signal to a SOS Call operator if an air bag is deployed. If the Air Bag Warning Light is illuminated, have an authorized dealer service your vehicle immediately.

#### WARNING!

- If anyone in the vehicle could be in danger (e.g., fire or smoke is visible, dangerous road conditions or location), do not wait for voice contact from a SOS Call operator. All occupants should exit the vehicle immediately and move to a safe location.
- The SOS Call system is embedded into the vehicle's electrical system. Do not add aftermarket electrical equipment to the vehicle's electrical system. This may prevent your vehicle from sending a signal to initiate an emergency call. To avoid interference that can cause the SOS Call system to fail, never add aftermarket equipment (e.g., two-way mobile radio, CB radio, data recorder, etc.) to your vehicle's electrical system or modify the antennas on your vehicle.
- IF YOUR VEHICLE LOSES BATTERY POWER FOR ANY REASON (INCLUDING DURING OR AFTER AN ACCIDENT), the Uconnect features, apps, and SiriusXM Guardian services, among others, will not operate.



**NOTE:**

Your vehicle may be transmitting data as authorized by the subscriber.

1. **ASSIST Call (4C/4C NAV) — If Equipped** — The rearview mirror contains an ASSIST button, allowing you to speak to a call center agent for support:

**Assist And SOS**

- 1 — ASSIST Button  
2 — SOS Button

- **Roadside Assistance Call** — If you get a flat tire, or need a tow, you'll be connected to someone who can help anytime. Additional fees may apply. Additional information in this section.

- **Uconnect Care** — In vehicle support for Uconnect Apps and Features.
- **SiriusXM Guardian Care** — In vehicle support for SiriusXM Guardian services.
- **Vehicle Care** — Total support for your FCA US LLC vehicle.

**NOTE:**

In order to provide SiriusXM Guardian Services to you, we may record and monitor your conversations with Roadside Assistance, Uconnect Care, SiriusXM Guardian Care, or Vehicle Care, whether such conversations are initiated through the SiriusXM Guardian services in your vehicle, your device, or via a landline device, and may share information obtained through such recording and monitoring in accordance with regulatory requirements. You acknowledge, agree, and consent to any recording, monitoring or sharing of information obtained through any such call recordings.

2. **Emergency SOS Call (If Equipped)** — The rearview mirror contains a SOS Call button that, when pressed, may place a call from your vehicle to a SiriusXM Guardian Care operator, who can connect you to emer-

gency service operators, to request help from local police, fire or ambulance personnel. If this button is accidentally pressed, you will have ten seconds to stop the call. To cancel, press the SOS Call button again or press the "Cancel" button shown on the touchscreen. After ten seconds has passed, the SOS call will be placed and only the SOS Call operator can cancel it. The LED light on the rearview mirror will turn green once a connection to a SOS Call operator has been made. The green LED light will turn off once the SOS Call is terminated. Have an authorized dealer service the vehicle if the rearview mirror light is continuously red. On equipped vehicles, this feature requires a functioning electrical system, a subscription, and an operable network connection. **If a connection is made between a SOS Call operator and your vehicle, you understand and agree that SOS Call operators will stay on the line, even after you connect with emergency services. The Emergency services operator may, like any other emergency call, record conversations and sounds in and near your vehicle upon connection.**

3. **Theft Alarm Notification — If Equipped —**

The Theft Alarm Notification feature notifies you via email or text (SMS) message when the vehicle's factory-installed security alarm system has been triggered. There are a number of reasons why your alarm may have been triggered, one of which could be that your vehicle was stolen. If so, please see the details of the Stolen Vehicle Assistance service below. When activated, Theft Alarm Notification is automatically set to send you an email at the email address you provide should the alarm go off. You may also opt to have a text message sent to your device.

4. **Stolen Vehicle Assistance —** If your vehicle is stolen, contact local law enforcement immediately to file a stolen vehicle report. Once this report has been filed, SiriusXM Guardian Care can help locate your vehicle. The SiriusXM Guardian Care agent will ask for the stolen vehicle report number issued by local law enforcement. As long as your vehicle has a SiriusXM Guardian subscription and an operable network connection, the agent may be able to locate the stolen vehicle and work with

law enforcement to help recover it. Your vehicle must have an operable network connection and must be registered with SiriusXM Guardian with an active subscription that includes the applicable feature.

5. **4G Wi-Fi Hotspot — If Equipped —** Allows you and your passengers to connect their portable devices to the built-in 4G Wi-Fi capabilities of your Uconnect system. Purchasing 4G Wi-Fi Hotspot requires the use of an Internet-enabled portable device.

**NOTE:**

Uconnect offers a complimentary 3-month trial period that includes 1GB of total data. The trial can be activated any time within the first year of new vehicle ownership.

- To start, the **Enable Wi-Fi Hotspot** box should be un-checked.
- Select the **Wi-Fi Hotspot Setup** option from the touchscreen to locate your Hotspot Name and Password. Make note of this information.

- Tap the Back Arrow to return to the main Wi-Fi Hotspot page, then check the box to **Enable Wi-Fi Hotspot**.

- From your portable device Wi-Fi settings menu, select the Hotspot Name from the list of available networks and enter the provided Password.

- Open the web browser on your portable device and enter the following web address:  
<https://myvehicle.att.com/#/login>.

- Create a myVehicle account or log in to your existing one.

- Select and purchase the desired subscription option. The Wi-Fi Hotspot will activate after a few minutes.

For additional assistance, call AT&T Customer Care at: 866-595-1330.

**NOTE:**

Your vehicle must have a working electrical system for any of the in vehicle SiriusXM Guardian services to operate.



## SiriusXM Guardian Remote Features

If you own a compatible iPhone or Android powered device, the Uconnect App allows you to remotely lock or unlock your doors, start your engine or activate your horn and lights from virtually anywhere. Your vehicle must be equipped with remote start, must have a SiriusXM Guardian subscription, and must have an operable network connection. Services can only be used where coverage is available. You can download the App from Mopar Owner Connect or from the App Store (iPhone) or Google Play Store (Android). Visit UconnectPhone.com to determine if your device is compatible. For Uconnect Phone customer support and to determine if your device is compatible.

U.S. residents - visit UconnectPhone.com or call 1-877-855-8400.

Canadian residents - visit UconnectPhone.com or call: 1-800-465-2001 (English) or call: 1-800-387-9983 (French).

**Remote Start (If Equipped)** — This feature provides the ability to start the engine on your vehicle, without the keys and from virtually any distance. You can send a request to your vehicle in one of two ways:

1. Using the Uconnect App from a compatible device.
2. From the Mopar Owner Connect website.
  - After 15 minutes if you have not entered your vehicle with the key, the engine will shut off automatically.
  - You can also send a command to turn-off an engine that has been remote started.
  - This remote function requires your vehicle to be equipped with a factory-installed Remote Start system. To utilize this feature after the Uconnect App is downloaded, login with your user name and password.

You will need your four digit SiriusXM Guardian Security PIN to confirm the request. Press the “remote start” icon on your Uconnect App to remotely start the vehicle.

You can set-up notifications for your account to receive an email or text (SMS) message every time a command is sent. Login to Mopar Owner Connect at mopar.com and click on Edit Profile to manage SiriusXM Guardian Notifications.

### **Remote Door Lock/Unlock — If Equipped —**

This feature provides the ability to lock or unlock the door on your vehicle, without the keys and from virtually any distance. You can send a request to your vehicle in one of three ways:

1. Using the Uconnect App from a compatible device.
2. From the Mopar Owner Connect website.
3. By contacting SiriusXM Guardian Care on the phone.

To use this feature after the Uconnect App is downloaded, login using your user name and password. You will need your four digit SiriusXM Guardian Security PIN to confirm the request. Press the “closed lock” icon on your Uconnect App to lock the doors, and press the “open lock” icon to unlock the driver’s door.

You can set-up notifications for your account to receive an email or text (SMS) message every time a command is sent. Login to Mopar Owner Connect at [mopar.com](http://mopar.com) and click on Edit Profile to manage SiriusXM Guardian Notifications.

**Remote Horn And Lights — If Equipped** — It's easy to locate a vehicle in a dark, crowded or noisy parking area by activating the horn and lights. It may also help if you need to draw attention to your vehicle for any reason. You can send a request to your vehicle in one of three ways:

1. Using the Uconnect App from a compatible device.
2. From the Mopar Owner Connect website.
3. By contacting the SiriusXM Guardian Care on the phone.

To use this feature after the Uconnect App is downloaded, login using your user name and password. You will need your four digit SiriusXM Guardian Security PIN to confirm the request. You can set-up notifications for your account to receive an email or text (SMS) message every time a command is

sent. Login to Mopar Owner Connect at [mopar.com](http://mopar.com) and click on Edit Profile to manage SiriusXM Guardian Notifications.

### Vehicle Finder

The Vehicle Finder feature of the Uconnect Mobile App allows you to find the location of your vehicle when you can't remember where it's parked. You can also sound the alarm and flash the lights to make finding your vehicle even easier.

To find your vehicle:

1. Press the "Location" tab on the Uconnect Mobile App bottom bar.
2. Select the "Vehicle" icon to determine the location of your vehicle.
3. Select the "Find Route" button that appears, once your vehicle is located.
4. Select your preferred Navigation App to route a path to your vehicle.

### Send & Go

The Send & Go feature of the Uconnect Mobile App allows you to search for a destination on your mobile device and then send the route to your vehicle's Uconnect Navigation system.

To send a navigation route to your vehicle:

1. Press the "Location" tab on the Uconnect Mobile App bottom bar.
2. Either type in the destination you would like to navigate to, or search through one of the categories provided.
3. Select the destination you want to route to from the list that appears.
4. Press the "Send To Vehicle" button, and then confirm the destination by pressing "Yes," to send the navigation route to the Uconnect Navigation in your vehicle.
5. Finally, confirm the route inside your vehicle by pressing the "Go Now" option on the pop-up that appears on the touchscreen, when the vehicle is started.



## UCONNECT SETTINGS

The Uconnect system allows you to access Customer Programmable feature settings such as Display, Voice, Clock, Safety & Driving Assistance, Lights, Doors & Locks, Auto-On Comfort, Engine Off Options, Compass Settings (Uconnect 3 with 5-inch display), Trailer Brake, Suspension, Audio,

- Language
- Display
- Voice
- Clock
- Camera
- Safety & Driving Assistance
- Mirrors & Wipers
- Lights
- Doors & Locks

### NOTE:

Depending on the vehicle's options, feature settings may vary.

Refer to “Uconnect Settings” found within “Multimedia” located in your Owner's Manual for further information.

Phone/Bluetooth, SiriusXM Setup, Restore Settings, Clear Personal Data, and System Information through buttons on the touchscreen.

- Push the SETTINGS button (Uconnect 3 With 5-inch Display), or press the “Apps” button (Uconnect 4C/4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display) located near the bottom of the touchscreen, then press the “Settings”
  - Engine Off Options
  - Trailer
  - Audio
  - Phone/Bluetooth
  - SiriusXM Setup
  - Reset Settings
  - System Information
  - Compass (Uconnect 3)

button on the touchscreen to access the Settings screen. When making a selection, scroll up or down until the preferred setting is highlighted, then press the preferred setting until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that setting has been selected. The following feature settings are available:

## TIPS CONTROLS AND GENERAL INFORMATION

### Steering Wheel Audio Controls



#### Steering Wheel Audio Controls

The steering wheel audio controls are located on the rear surface of the steering wheel.

### Reception Conditions

Reception conditions change constantly while driving. Reception may be interfered with by the presence of mountains, buildings or bridges, especially when you are far away from the broadcaster.

The volume may be increased when receiving traffic alerts and news.

## Care And Maintenance

Observe the following precautions to ensure the system is fully operational:

- The display lens should not come into contact with pointed or rigid objects which could damage its surface; use a soft, dry anti-static cloth to clean and do not press.
- Never use alcohol, gas and derivatives to clean the display lens.
- Prevent any liquid from entering the system: this could damage it beyond repair.

### Anti-Theft Protection

The system is equipped with an anti-theft protection system based on the exchange of information with the electronic control unit (Body Computer) on the vehicle.

This guarantees maximum safety and prevents the secret code from being entered after the power supply has been disconnected.

If the check has a positive outcome, the system will start to operate, whereas if the comparison codes are not the same or if the electronic control unit (Body Computer) is

replaced, the system will ask the user to enter the secret code. See an authorized dealer for further information.

## IPOD/USB/MEDIA PLAYER CONTROL



#### Uconnect Media Hub

- 1 — USB Port
- 2 — AUX Jack
- 3 — USB Port

There are many ways to play music from MP3 players, or USB devices through your vehicle's sound system. Press your Media button on the touchscreen to begin.



## Audio Jack (AUX)

- The AUX allows a device to be plugged into the radio and utilize the vehicle's sound system, using a 3.5 mm audio cable, to amplify the source and play through the vehicle speakers.
- Pressing the “AUX” button on the touchscreen will change the mode to auxiliary device if the audio jack is connected, allowing the music from your device to be heard through the vehicle's speakers. To activate the AUX, plug in the audio jack.
- The functions of the device are controlled using the device buttons. The volume may be controlled using the radio or device.

## USB Port

- Connect your compatible device into the USB Port using a USB cable. USB Memory sticks with audio files can also be used. Audio from the device can be played on the vehicle's sound system while providing metadata (artist, track title, album, etc.) information on the radio display.

- When connected, the compatible USB device can be controlled using the radio or Steering Wheel Audio Controls to play, skip to the next or previous track, browse, and list the contents.
- The battery charges when plugged into the USB port (if supported by the specific device).
- To route the USB cable out of the center console, use the access cut out.

### NOTE:

When connecting your device for the first time, the system may take several minutes to read your music, depending on the number of files. For example, the system will take approximately five minutes for every 1,000 songs loaded on the device. Also during the reading process, the Shuffle and Browse functions will be disabled. This process is needed to ensure the full use of your features and only happens the first time it is connected. After the first time, the reading process of your device will take considerably less time unless changes are made or new songs are added to the playlist.

## Bluetooth Streaming Audio

If using a Bluetooth equipped device you may also be able to stream music to your vehicle's sound system. Your connected device must be Bluetooth compatible and paired with your system (see Uconnect Phone for pairing instructions). You can access the music from your connected Bluetooth device by pressing the Bluetooth button on the touchscreen while in Media mode.

## NAVIGATION — IF EQUIPPED

- The information in the section below is only applicable if you have the Uconnect 4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display system.

Press the “Nav” button on the touchscreen in the menu bar to access the Navigation system.

## Changing The Navigation Voice Prompt Volume

### Changing The Navigation Voice Prompt Volume

1. Press the “Settings” button on the touchscreen in the lower right area of the screen.

2. In the Settings menu, press the “Guidance” button on the touchscreen.
3. In the Guidance menu, adjust the Nav Volume by pressing the “+” or “-” buttons on the touchscreen.



#### Uconnect 4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display Navigation

- 1 — Search For A Destination In All Categories
- 2 — Find A Destination

- 3 — View Map
- 4 — Navigate To Saved Home Destination
- 5 — Navigate To Saved Work Destination

- 6 — Navigation Settings
- 7 — Emergency
- 8 — Information



## Finding Points Of Interest

- From the main Navigation menu, press the “Where To?” button on the touchscreen, then press the “Points of Interest” button on the touchscreen.
- Select a category and then a subcategory, if necessary.
- Select your destination and press the “GO!” button on the touchscreen.

## Finding A Place By Spelling The Name

- From the Main Navigation Menu press the “Where to?” button on the touchscreen, press the “Points of Interest” button on the touchscreen, then press the “Spell Name” or “Search All” button on the touchscreen.
- Enter the name of your destination.
- Press the “List” or “OK” button on the touchscreen.
- Select your destination and press the “GO!” button on the touchscreen.

## One-Step Voice Destination Entry

- Enter a navigation destination without taking your hands off the wheel.
- Just push the Uconnect Voice Command  button on the steering wheel, wait for the beep and say something like, “**Find Address** 800 Chrysler Drive Auburn Hills MI.”

### NOTE:

Using your touchscreens keyboard is not available while your vehicle is in motion. However, you can also use Voice Commands to enter an address while moving. Refer to “Uconnect Voice Recognition Quick Tips” in this section for further information.

## Setting Your Home Location

- To add a Home location, press the “Nav” button on the touchscreen in the menu bar to access the Navigation system and the Main Navigation menu.
- Press the “Home” button on the touchscreen. You can add a Home location by either selecting “Spell City,” “Spell Street,” or “Select Country.” Select County is automatically filled out based on your state.

- Once you have entered your Home location, select the “Save Home” button located on the lower left-hand side of your touchscreen.
- To delete a saved Home location (or other saved locations), so you can save a new Home location, press the “Nav” button on the touchscreen, and in the “Where To” screen, press “Edit Where To” and then press the “Home” button on the touchscreen. Under the Manage screen press the “Reset Location” button. A confirmation screen will appear asking if you “Are you sure you want to reset this location?” Press “Reset” to confirm the deletion. Set a new Home location by following the previous instructions.

## Home

- A Home location must be saved in the system. From the Main Navigation menu, press the “Home” button on the touchscreen.



**Uconnect 4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display Map**

- 1 — Distance To Next Turn
- 2 — Next Turn Street
- 3 — Estimated Time Of Arrival
- 4 — Zoom In And Out

- 5 — Your Location On The Map
- 6 — Navigation Main Menu
- 7 — Current Street Location
- 8 — Navigation Routing Options

Your route is marked with a blue line on the map. If you depart from the original route, your route is recalculated. A speed limit icon could appear as you travel on major roadways.

## Adding A Stop

- To add a stop you must be navigating a route.
- Press the “Menu” button on the touchscreen to return to the Main Navigation menu.
- Press the “Where To?” button on the touchscreen, then search for the extra stop. When another location has been selected, you can choose to cancel your previous route, add as the first destination or add as the last destination.
- Press the desired selection and press the “GO!” button on the touchscreen.

## SiriusXM Traffic Plus (4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display)

### Don't Drive Through Traffic. Drive Around It.

Avoid congestion before you reach it. By enhancing your vehicle's navigation system with the ability to see detailed traffic information, you can pinpoint traffic incidents, determine average traffic speed and estimate travel time along your route. Since the service

is integrated with a vehicle's navigation system, SiriusXM Traffic Plus can help drivers pick the fastest route based on traffic conditions.

- Detailed information on traffic speed, accidents, construction, and road closings.
- Traffic information from multiple sources, including police and emergency services, cameras and road sensors.
- Coast-to-coast delivery of traffic information.
- View conditions for points along your route and beyond. Available in over 130 markets.

## SiriusXM Travel Link (4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display)

In addition to delivering over 130 channels of the best sports, entertainment, talk, and commercial-free music, SiriusXM offers premium data services that work in conjunction with compatible navigation systems. SiriusXM Travel Link brings a wealth of useful information into your vehicle and right to your fingertips.

- **Fuel Prices** — Check local gas and diesel prices in your area and route to the station of your choice.
- **Movie Listings** — Check local movie theatres and listings in your area and route to the theater of your choice.
- **Sports Scores** — In-game and final scores as well as weekly schedules.
- **Weather** — Check variety of local and national weather information from radar maps to current and 5-day forecast.

SiriusXM Travel Link feature is completely integrated into your vehicle. A few minutes after you start your vehicle, Travel Link information arrives and updates in the background. You can access the information whenever you like, with no waiting.

To access SiriusXM Travel Link, press “Apps” button on the touchscreen, then press the “SiriusXM Travel Link” button on the touchscreen.

### NOTE:

SiriusXM Travel Link requires a subscription, sold separately after the trial subscription included with your vehicle purchase.

## UCONNECT PHONE

### Uconnect Phone (Bluetooth Hands Free Calling)



Uconnect 3 With 5-inch Display Radio Phone Menu

- 1 — Call/Redial/Hold
- 2 — Mobile Phone Signal Strength
- 3 — Currently Paired Mobile Phone
- 4 — Mobile Phone Battery Life

- 5 — Mute Microphone
- 6 — Transfer To/From Uconnect System
- 7 — Uconnect Phone Settings Menu
- 8 — Text Messaging

- 9 — Direct Dial Pad
- 10 — Recent Call Log
- 11 — Browse Phone Book (Contains 9-1-1)
- 12 — End Call



**Uconnect 4C/4C NAV Phone Menu**

- 1 — Currently Paired Mobile Phone
- 2 — Mobile Phone Signal Strength
- 3 — Do Not Disturb
- 4 — Reply with Text Message
- 5 — Current Phone Contact's Name
- 6 — Conference Call\*
- 7 — Phone Pairing
- 8 — Text Messaging Menu\*\*

- 9 — Direct Dial Pad
- 10 — Contact Menu
- 11 — Recent Call Log
- 12 — Favorite Contacts
- 13 — Mute Microphone
- 14 — Decline Incoming Call
- 15 — Answer/Redial/Hold
- 16 — Mobile Phone Battery Life

- 17 — Transfer To/From Uconnect System
- \* — Conference call feature only available on GSM mobile devices
- \*\* — Text messaging feature not available on all mobile phones (requires Bluetooth MAP profile)

The Uconnect Phone feature enables you to place and receive hands-free mobile phone calls. Drivers can also place mobile phone calls using their voice or by using the buttons on the touchscreen (see Voice Command section).

The hands-free calling feature is made possible through Bluetooth technology — the global standard that enables different electronic devices to connect to each other wirelessly.

If the Uconnect Phone Button  exists on your steering wheel, you then have the Uconnect Phone features.

#### NOTE:

- The Uconnect Phone requires a mobile phone equipped with the Bluetooth Hands-Free Profile, Version 1.0 or higher.
- Most mobile phones/devices are compatible with the Uconnect system, however some mobile phones/devices may not be equipped with all of the required features to utilize all of the Uconnect system features.

For Uconnect Customer Care:

- U.S. residents visit [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com) or call 1-877-855-8400
- Canadian residents visit [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com) or call 1-800-465-2001 (English) or 1-800-387-9983 (French).

### Pairing (Wirelessly Connecting) Your Mobile Phone To The Uconnect System

Mobile phone pairing is the process of establishing a wireless connection between a cellular phone and the Uconnect system.

#### NOTE:

- To use the Uconnect Phone feature, you first must determine if your mobile phone and software are compatible with the Uconnect system. Please visit [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com) for complete mobile phone compatibility information.
- Mobile phone pairing is not available while the vehicle is in motion.
- A maximum of ten mobile phones can be paired to the Uconnect system.

### Start Pairing Procedure On The Radio

#### Uconnect 3:



#### Uconnect 3

1. Place the ignition in the ACC or ON position.
2. Press the “Phone” button.
3. Select “Settings.”
4. Select “Paired Phones.”
5. Select “Add device.”
  - Uconnect Phone will display an “In progress” screen while the system is connecting.

**Uconnect 4C, 4C NAV:****Uconnect 4C & 4C NAV**

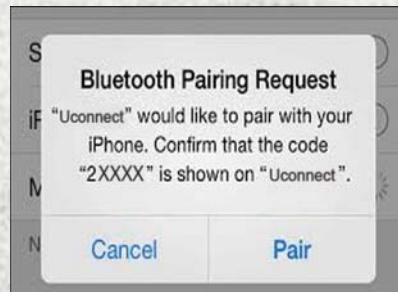
1. Place the ignition in the ACC or ON position.
2. Press the “Phone” button in the Menu Bar on the touchscreen.
3. Select “Settings.”
4. Select “Paired Phones.”
5. Select “Add device.”
  - Uconnect Phone will display an “In progress” screen while the system is connecting.

**Pair Your iPhone:****Bluetooth On/Uconnect Device**

To search for available devices on your Bluetooth enabled iPhone:

1. Press the Settings button.
2. Select Bluetooth.
  - Ensure the Bluetooth feature is enabled. Once enabled, the mobile phone will begin to search for Bluetooth connections.

3. When your mobile phone finds the Uconnect system, select “Uconnect”.

**Complete The iPhone Pairing Procedure:****Pairing Request**

1. When prompted on the mobile phone, accept the connection request from Uconnect Phone.

**NOTE:**

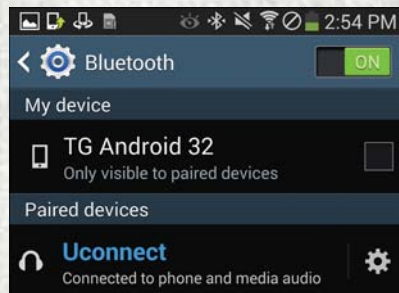
Some mobile phones will require you to enter the PIN number.

**Select The iPhone's Priority Level**

When the pairing process has successfully completed, the system will prompt you to choose whether or not this is your favorite

mobile phone. Selecting “Yes” will make this mobile phone the highest priority. This mobile phone will take precedence over other paired mobile phones within range and will connect to the Uconnect system automatically when entering the vehicle. Only one mobile phone and/or one Bluetooth audio device can be connected to the Uconnect system at a time. If “No” is selected, simply select “Uconnect” from the mobile phone/audio device Bluetooth screen, and the Uconnect system will reconnect to the Bluetooth device.

#### Pair Your Android Device:

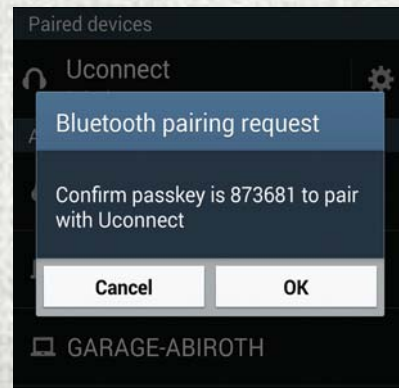


Uconnect Device

To search for available devices on your Bluetooth enabled Android Device:

1. Push the Menu button.
  2. Select Settings.
  3. Select Connections.
  4. Turn Bluetooth setting to “On.”
    - Ensure the Bluetooth feature is enabled. Once enabled, the mobile phone will begin to search for Bluetooth connections.
  5. Once your mobile phone finds the Uconnect system, select “Uconnect”.
- You may be prompted by your mobile phone to download the phonebook, check “Do Not Ask Again” to automatically download the phonebook. This is so you can make calls by saying the name of your contact.

#### Complete The Android Pairing Procedure:



#### Pairing Request

1. Confirm the passkey shown on the mobile phone matches the passkey shown on the Uconnect system then accept the Bluetooth pairing request.

#### NOTE:

Some mobile phones require the PIN to be entered manually, enter the PIN number shown on the Uconnect screen.



## Select The Android Mobile Phone's Priority Level

When the pairing process has successfully completed, the system will prompt you to choose whether or not this is your favorite mobile phone. Selecting “Yes” will make this mobile phone the highest priority. This mobile phone will take precedence over other paired mobile phones within range and will connect to the Uconnect system automatically when entering the vehicle. Only one mobile phone and/or one Bluetooth audio device can be connected to the Uconnect system at a time. If “No” is selected, simply select “Uconnect” from the mobile phone/audio device Bluetooth screen, and the Uconnect system will reconnect to the Bluetooth device.

### NOTE:

Keep in mind that software updates – either on your phone or Uconnect system – may interfere with the Bluetooth connection. If this happens, simply repeat the pairing process. However, first, make sure to delete the device from the list of phones on your Uconnect system. Next, be sure to remove

Uconnect from the list of devices in your phone's Bluetooth settings.

You are now ready to make hands-free calls. Press the Uconnect “Phone” button  on your steering wheel to begin.

### NOTE:

Refer to [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com) website for additional information on mobile phone pairing and for a list of compatible phones.

## Common Phone Commands (Examples)

- “Call John Smith”
- “Call John Smith mobile”
- “Dial 1 248 555 1212”
- “Redial”

## Mute (Or Unmute) Microphone During Call

- During a call, press the “Mute” button on the Phone main screen to mute and unmute the call.

## Transfer Ongoing Call Between Handset And Vehicle

- During an on-going call, press the “Transfer” button on the Phone main screen to transfer an on-going call between handset and vehicle.

## Phonebook

The Uconnect system will automatically sync your phonebook from your paired phone, if this feature is supported by your phone. Phonebook contacts are updated each time that the phone is connected. If your phone book entries do not appear, check the settings on your phone. Some phones require you to enable this feature manually.

- Your phonebook can be browsed on the Uconnect system touchscreen, but editing can only be done on your phone. To browse, press the “Phone” button on the touchscreen, then the “Phonebook” button on the touchscreen.

Favorite phonebook entries can be saved as Favorites for quicker access. Favorites are shown at the top of the main phone screen.

## Voice Command Tips

- Speaking complete names (i.e; Call John Doe vs. Call John) will result in greater system accuracy.
- You can “link” commands together for faster results. Say “Call John Doe, mobile,” for example.
- If you are listening to available voice command options, you do not have to listen to the entire list. When you hear the command that you need, push the VR button on the steering wheel, wait for the beep and say your command.

## Changing The Volume

- Start a dialogue by pushing the VR button , then say a command. For example, “Help”.
- Use the radio VOLUME rotary knob to adjust the volume to a comfortable level while the Uconnect system is speaking.

### NOTE:

The volume setting for Uconnect is different than the audio system.

### NOTE:

To access help, push the Uconnect VR button  (if active) on the steering wheel and say “help.” Push the Uconnect VR Pickup button  (if active) or the VR button  (if active) and say “cancel” to cancel the help session.

## Using Do Not Disturb

With Do Not Disturb, you can disable notifications from incoming calls and texts, allowing you to keep your eyes on the road and hands on the wheel. For your convenience, there is a counter display to keep track of your missed calls and text messages while you were using Do Not Disturb.

Do Not Disturb can automatically reply with a text message, a call or both, when declining an incoming call and send it to voicemail.

Automatic reply messages can be:

- “I am driving right now, I will get back to you shortly.”
- Create a custom auto reply message up to 160 characters.

While in Do Not Disturb, Conference Call can be selected so you can still place a second call without being interrupted by incoming calls.

### NOTE:

- Only the beginning of your custom message will be seen on the touchscreen.
- Reply with text message is not compatible with iPhones.
- Auto reply with text message is only available on phones that supporting Bluetooth MAP.

## Incoming Text Messages

After pairing your Uconnect system with a Bluetooth enabled mobile device with the Message Access Profile (MAP), the Uconnect system can announce a new incoming text message and read it to you over the vehicle's audio system.

### NOTE:

Only incoming text messages received during the current ignition cycle can be viewed/read.

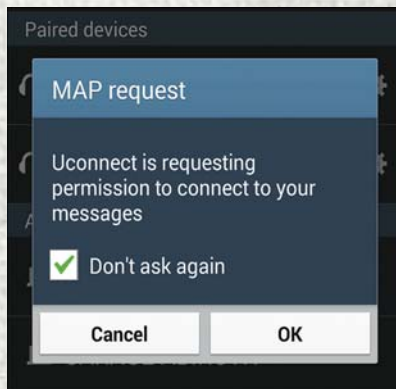


**To enable incoming text messaging:****iPhone**

1. Press the settings button on the mobile phone.
2. Select Bluetooth.
  - Ensure Bluetooth is enabled, and the mobile phone is paired to the Uconnect system.
3. Select ① located under DEVICES next to Uconnect.
4. Turn "Show Notifications" to on.

**Enable iPhone Incoming Text Messages****Android Devices**

1. Push the Menu button on the mobile phone.
2. Select Settings.
3. Select Connections.
4. Turn "Show Notifications" to on.
  - A pop up will appear asking you to accept a request for permission to connect to your messages. Select "Don't ask again" and press OK.

**Enable Android Device Incoming Text Messages****NOTE:**

All incoming text messages received during the current ignition cycle will be deleted from the Uconnect system when the ignition is turned to the OFF position.

## Helpful Tips And Common Questions To Improve Bluetooth Performance With Your Uconnect System

### Mobile Phone won't reconnect to system after pairing:

- Set mobile phone to auto-connect or trusted device in mobile phone Bluetooth settings (Blackberry devices).
- Perform a factory reset on your mobile phone. Refer to your mobile phone manufacturer or cellular provider for instructions.
- Many mobile phones do not automatically reconnect after being restarted (hard reboot). Your mobile phone can still be connected manually. Close all applications that may be operating (refer to mobile phone manufacturer's instructions), and follow "Pairing (Wirelessly Connecting) Your Mobile Phone To The Uconnect System".

### Mobile Phone won't pair to system:

- Perform a hard reset in the mobile phone by removing the battery (if removable — see your mobile phone's owner manual).
- Delete pairing history in mobile phone and Uconnect system; usually found in phone's Bluetooth connection settings.
- Verify you are selecting "Uconnect" in the discovered Bluetooth devices on your mobile phone.
- If your vehicle system generates a pin code the default is 0000.

### Mobile Phonebook didn't download:

- Check "Do not ask again," then accept the "phonebook download" request on your mobile phone.
- Up to 5,000 contact names with four numbers per contact will transfer to the Uconnect 4C/4C NAV system phonebook.

### Can't make a conference call:

- CDMA (Code-Division Multiple Access) carriers do not support conference calling. Refer to your mobile phone user's manual for further information.

### Making calls while connected to AUX:

- Plugging in your mobile phone to AUX while connected to Bluetooth will disable Hands-Free Calling. Do not make calls while your mobile phone is plugged into the AUX jack.

## UCONNECT VOICE RECOGNITION QUICK TIPS

### Introducing Uconnect

Start using Uconnect Voice Recognition with these helpful quick tips. It provides the key Voice Commands and tips you need to know to control your Uconnect system.

If you see the NAV icon on the bottom bar, or in the Apps menus, of your touchscreen, you have the Uconnect 4C NAV system. If not, you have a Uconnect 4C system.

### Get Started

1. U.S. residents can visit **UconnectPhone.com** to check device and feature compatibility and to find device pairing instructions.
2. Reduce background noise. Wind and passenger conversations are examples of noise that may impact recognition.
3. Speak clearly at a normal pace and volume while facing straight ahead. The microphone is positioned on the headliner and aimed at the driver.
4. Each time you give a Voice Command, you must first push either the VR or Phone button, wait until **after** the beep, then say your Voice Command.
5. You can interrupt the help message or system prompts by pushing the VR or Phone button and saying a Voice Command from current category.



All you need to control your Uconnect system with your voice are the buttons on your steering wheel.



**Uconnect VR And Phone Buttons**

- 1 — Push To Begin Radio Or Media Functions  
 2 — Push To Initiate, Answer, End A Phone Call, Or Send/Receive A Text

## Basic Voice Commands

The basic Voice Commands below can be given at any point while using your Uconnect system.

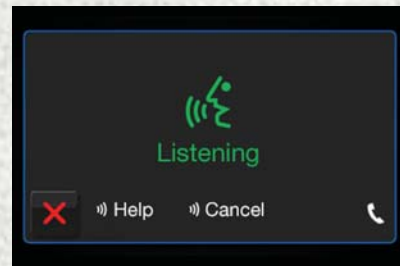
Push the VR button . After the beep, say:

- **“Cancel”** to stop a current voice session
- **“Help”** to hear a list of suggested Voice Commands
- **“Repeat”** to listen to the system prompts again

Notice the visual cues that inform you of your voice recognition system's status. Cues appear on the top of the touchscreen.



**Uconnect 3.0 Radio Visual Cues**



**Uconnect 3 With 5-inch Display Radio Visual Cues**



**Uconnect 4C/4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display Radio Visual Cues**

## Radio

Use your voice to quickly get to the AM, FM or SiriusXM Satellite Radio stations you would like to hear. (Subscription or included SiriusXM Satellite Radio trial required.)

Push the VR button . After the beep, say:

- **“Tune to ninety-five-point-five FM”**
- **“Tune to Satellite Channel Hits 1”**

**TIP:** At any time, if you are not sure of what to say or want to learn a Voice Command, push the VR button  and say **“Help.”** The system will provide you with a list of commands.



Uconnect 3.0



Uconnect 3 With 5-inch Display Radio



Uconnect 4C/4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display Radio

## Media

Uconnect offers connections via USB, Bluetooth and auxiliary ports (If Equipped). Voice operation is only available for connected USB and iPod devices. (Remote CD player optional and not available on all vehicles.)

Push the VR button . After the beep, say one of the following commands and follow the prompts to switch your media source or choose an artist.

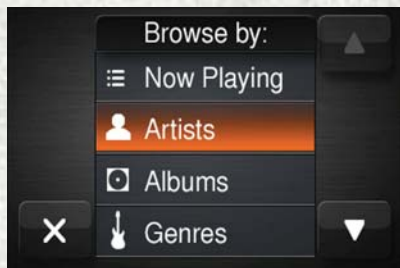
- **“Change source to Bluetooth”**
- **“Change source to iPod”**
- **“Change source to USB”**
- **“Play artist Beethoven”**; **“Play album Greatest Hits”**; **“Play song Moonlight Sonata”**; **“Play genre Classical”**



**TIP:** Press the Browse button on the touch-screen to see all of the music on your iPod or USB device. Your Voice Command must match **exactly** how the artist, album, song and genre information is displayed.



Uconnect 3.0 Display Media



Uconnect 3 With 5-inch Display Media



Uconnect 4C/4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display Media

## Phone

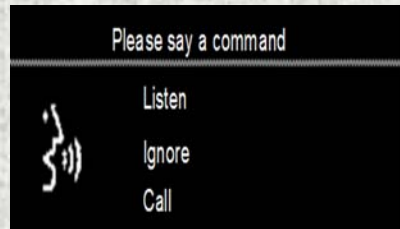
Making and answering hands-free phone calls is easy with Uconnect. When the Phone-book button is illuminated on your touch-screen, your system is ready.

U.S. residents can visit [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com) to check device and feature compatibility and to find device pairing instructions.

Push the Phone button . After the beep, say one of the following commands:

- “**Call** John Smith”
- “**Dial** 123-456-7890 and follow the system prompts”
- “**Redial** (call previous outgoing phone number)”
- “**Call back** (call previous incoming phone number)”

**TIP:** When providing a Voice Command, push the Phone button  and say “**Call**,” then pronounce the name **exactly** as it appears in your phone book. When a contact has multiple phone numbers, you can say “**Call** John Smith **work**.”



Uconnect 3.0 Display Phone



**Uconnect 3 With 5-inch Display Phone**



**Uconnect 4C/4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display Phone**

## Voice Text Reply

Uconnect announces **incoming** text messages. Push the Phone button  and say “**Listen.**” (Must have compatible mobile phone paired to Uconnect system.)

1. Once an incoming text message is read to you, push the Phone button . After the beep, say: “**Reply.**”
2. Listen to the Uconnect prompts. After the beep, repeat one of the pre-defined messages and follow the system prompts.

### PRE-DEFINED VOICE TEXT REPLY RESPONSES

|                      |                       |                                  |
|----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| Yes.                 | Stuck in traffic.     | See you later.                   |
| No.                  | Start without me.     | I'll be late.                    |
| Okay.                | Where are you?        | I will be <number> minutes late. |
| Call me.             | Are you there yet?    |                                  |
| I'll call you later. | I need directions.    | See you in <number> of minutes.  |
| I'm on my way.       | Can't talk right now. |                                  |
| I'm lost.            |                       | Thanks.                          |

**TIP:** Your mobile phone must have the full implementation of the **Message Access Profile (MAP)** to take advantage of this feature. For details about MAP, visit [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com).

Apple iPhone iOS 6 or later supports reading **incoming** text messages only. To enable this feature on your Apple iPhone, follow these four simple steps:



### iPhone Notification Settings

- 1 — Select “Settings”
- 2 — Select “Bluetooth”
- 3 — Select The (i) For The Paired Vehicle
- 4 — Turn On “Show Notifications”

**TIP:** Voice Text Reply is not compatible with iPhone, but if your vehicle is equipped with Siri Eyes Free, you can use your voice to send a text message.

## Climate (4C/4C NAV)

Too hot? Too cold? Adjust vehicle temperatures hands-free and keep everyone comfortable while you keep moving ahead. (If vehicle is equipped with climate control.)

Push the VR button . After the beep, say one of the following commands:

- “Set driver temperature to 70 degrees”
- “Set passenger temperature to 70 degrees”

**TIP:** Voice Command for Climate may only be used to adjust the interior temperature of your vehicle. Voice Command will not work to adjust the heated seats or steering wheel if equipped.



Uconnect 4C/4C NAV Climate

## Navigation (4C NAV)

The Uconnect navigation feature helps you save time and become more productive when you know exactly how to get to where you want to go.

1. To enter a destination, push the VR button . After the beep, say: “Find address 800 Chrysler Drive Auburn Hills, Michigan.”

2. Then follow the system prompts.

**TIP:** To start a POI search, push the VR button . After the beep, say: “Find nearest coffee shop.”



Uconnect 4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display Navigation

## SiriusXM Guardian (4C/4C NAV)— If Equipped

### CAUTION!

Some SiriusXM Guardian services, including SOS Call and Roadside Assistance Call will NOT work without an operable LTE (voice/data) or 3G or 4G (data) network connection compatible with your device.

### NOTE:

Your vehicle may be transmitting data as authorized by the subscriber.

An included trial and/or subscription is required to take advantage of the SiriusXM Guardian services in the next section of this guide. To register with SiriusXM Guardian, press the Apps button on the Uconnect 4C/4C NAV touchscreen to get started.

### NOTE:

SiriusXM Guardian is available only on equipped vehicles purchased within the continental United States, Alaska, Hawaii and

Canada. Services can only be used where coverage is available; see coverage map for details.



SOS Call



Theft Alarm Notification



Remote Door Lock/Unlock



Send & Go



Vehicle Finder



Stolen Vehicle Assistance



Remote Vehicle Start\*\*



Remote Horn & Lights



Roadside Assistance Call

Vehicle Health Reports\*\*

Vehicle Health Alert\*\*

Performance Pages Plus\*\*

\*\*If vehicle is equipped.

## Register (4C/4C NAV)

To unlock the full potential of SiriusXM Guardian in your vehicle, you must activate your SiriusXM Guardian services.

1. Press the Apps icon on the bottom of your in-vehicle touchscreen.

2. Select the Activate Services icon from your list of apps.

3. Select “Customer Care” to speak with a SiriusXM Guardian Customer Care agent who will activate services in your vehicle, or select “Enter Email” to activate on the web.

• U.S. residents visit:  
[www.siriusxm.com/guardian](http://www.siriusxm.com/guardian).

• Canadian residents visit:  
[www.siriusxm.ca/guardian](http://www.siriusxm.ca/guardian).

## Vehicle Health Report/Alert (4C/4C NAV)

Your vehicle will send you a monthly email report, which summarizes the performance of your vehicle's key systems so you can stay on top of your vehicle's maintenance needs if you are registered for SiriusXM Guardian. Your vehicle will also send you Vehicle Health Alerts when it detects issues with its key systems that need your attention. For further information, refer to your owner's manual.



## Mobile App (4C/4C NAV)

You're only a few steps away from using remote commands and sending a destination from your phone to your vehicle.



Mobile App

To use the Uconnect Mobile App:

- Once you have registered your SiriusXM Guardian services, download the Uconnect App to your mobile device. Use your Owner Account login and password to open the app.

- Once on the “Remote” screen, you can begin using Remote Door Lock/Unlock, Remote Vehicle Start, and activate your horn and lights remotely, if equipped.
- Press the “Location” button on the bottom menu bar of the app to bring up a map to locate your vehicle or send a location to your Uconnect Navigation using Vehicle Finder and Send & Go, if equipped.
- Press the “Settings” side menu in the upper left corner of the app to bring up app settings.

### NOTE:

For further information please visit [DriveUconnect.com](http://DriveUconnect.com) (U.S. Residents) or [DriveUconnect.ca](http://DriveUconnect.ca) (Canadian Residents).

## SiriusXM Travel Link (4C NAV)

Need to find a gas station, view local movie listings, check a sports score or the 5-day weather forecast? SiriusXM Travel Link is a suite of services that brings a wealth of information right to your Uconnect 4C NAV system. (Not available for 4C system.)

Push the VR button . After the beep, say one of the following commands:

- “Show fuel prices”
- “Show 5-day weather forecast”
- “Show extended weather”

**TIP:** Traffic alerts are not accessible with Voice Command.

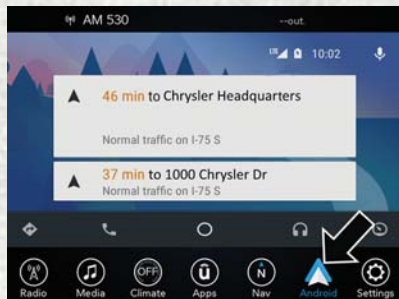


SiriusXM Travel Link



steering wheel, or press and hold the “Microphone” icon within Android Auto, to activate Android’s VR, which recognizes natural voice commands, to use a list of your smartphone’s features:

- Maps
- Music
- Phone
- Text Messages
- Additional Apps



Android Auto On 8.4-inch Display

#### NOTE:

Requires compatible smartphone running Android™ 5.0 Lollipop or higher and download app on Google Play. Android, Android Auto, and Google Play are trademarks of Google Inc.

Refer to your Uconnect Owner’s Manual Supplement for further information.

### Apple CarPlay — If Equipped

#### NOTE:

Feature availability depends on your carrier and mobile phone manufacturer. Some Apple CarPlay features may or may not be available in every region and/or language.

Apple CarPlay allows you to use your voice to interact with Siri through your vehicle’s voice recognition system, and use your smartphone’s data plan to project your iPhone and a number of its apps onto your Uconnect touchscreen. Connect your iPhone 5, or higher, to one of the media USB ports, using the factory-provided Lightning cable, and press the new CarPlay icon that replaces your “Phone” icon on the main menu bar to begin Apple CarPlay. Press and hold the VR button

on the steering wheel, or press and hold the “Home” button within Apple CarPlay, to activate Siri, which recognizes natural voice commands to use a list of your iPhone’s features:

- Phone
- Music
- Messages
- Maps
- Additional Apps



Apple CarPlay On 8.4-inch Display

**NOTE:**

Requires compatible iPhone. See dealer for phone compatibility. Data plan rates apply. Vehicle user interface is a product of Apple®. Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc. iPhone is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries. Apple terms of use and privacy statements apply.

Refer to your Uconnect Owner's Manual Supplement for further information.

**General Information**

The following regulatory statement applies to all Radio Frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**NOTE:**

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**Additional Information**

© 2018 FCA US LLC. All rights reserved. Mopar and Uconnect are registered trademarks and Mopar Owner Connect is a trademark of FCA US LLC. Android is a trademark of Google Inc. SiriusXM and all related marks and logos are trademarks of SiriusXM Radio Inc.

**Uconnect System Support:**

- U.S. residents visit [DriveUconnect.com](http://DriveUconnect.com) or call: 1-877-855-8400 (24 hours a day 7 days a week)
- Canadian residents visit [DriveUconnect.ca](http://DriveUconnect.ca) or call: 1-800-465-2001 (English) or 1-800-387-9983 (French)

**SiriusXM Guardian services support:**

- U.S. residents visit [siriusxm.com/guardian](http://siriusxm.com/guardian) or call: 1-844-796-4827
- Canadian residents visit [www.siriusxm.ca/guardian](http://www.siriusxm.ca/guardian) or call: 1-877-324-9091





# CUSTOMER ASSISTANCE

## IF YOU NEED ASSISTANCE . . . . .274

FCA US LLC Customer Center. . . . .274

FCA Canada Inc. Customer Center . . .274

In Mexico Contact . . . . .274

Puerto Rico And  
U.S. Virgin Islands . . . . .274

Customer Assistance For The Hearing  
Or Speech Impaired (TDD/TTY) . . . . .275

Service Contract . . . . .275

## REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS . . . . .276

In The 50 United States And  
Washington, D.C. . . . .276

In Canada. . . . .276

## PUBLICATION ORDER FORMS . . . . .276



## IF YOU NEED ASSISTANCE

The manufacturer and its authorized dealer are vitally interested in your satisfaction. We want you to be happy with our products and services.

Warranty service must be done by an authorized dealer. We strongly recommend that you take the vehicle to an authorized dealer. They know your vehicle the best, and are most concerned that you get prompt and high quality service. The manufacturer's authorized dealer have the facilities, factory-trained technicians, special tools, and the latest information to ensure the vehicle is fixed correctly and in a timely manner.

This is why you should always talk to an authorized dealer service manager first. Most matters can be resolved with this process.

- If for some reason you are still not satisfied, talk to the general manager or owner of the authorized dealer. They want to know if you need assistance.

- If an authorized dealer is unable to resolve the concern, you may contact the manufacturer's customer center.

Any communication to the manufacturer's customer center should include the following information:

- Owner's name and address
- Owner's telephone number (home and office)
- Authorized dealer name
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Vehicle delivery date and mileage

### FCA US LLC Customer Center

P.O. Box 21-8004

Auburn Hills, MI 48321-8004

Phone: (866) 726-4636

### FCA Canada Inc. Customer Center

P.O. Box 1621

Windsor, Ontario N9A 4H6

Phone: (800) 465-2001 English / (800) 387-9983 French

## In Mexico Contact

Av. Prolongacion Paseo de la Reforma, 1240

Sante Fe C.P. 05109

Mexico, D. F.

In Mexico City: 5081-7568

Outside Mexico City: 1-800-505-1300

## Puerto Rico And U.S. Virgin Islands

FCA Caribbean LLC

P.O. Box 191857

San Juan 00919-1857

Phone: (866) 726-4636

Fax: (787) 782-3345

## Customer Assistance For The Hearing Or Speech Impaired (TDD/TTY)

To assist customers who have hearing difficulties, the manufacturer has installed special TDD (Telecommunication Devices for the Deaf) equipment at its customer center. Any hearing or speech impaired customer, who has access to a TDD or a conventional teletypewriter (TTY) in the United States, can communicate with the manufacturer by dialing 1-800-380-CHRY.

Canadian residents with hearing difficulties that require assistance can use the special needs relay service offered by Bell Canada. For TTY teletypewriter users, dial 711 and for Voice callers, dial 1-800-855-0511 to connect with a Bell Relay Service operator.

## Service Contract

You may have purchased a service contract for a vehicle to help protect you from the high cost of unexpected repairs after the manufacturer's New Vehicle Limited Warranty expires.

The manufacturer stands behind only the manufacturer's service contracts. If you purchased a manufacturer's service contract, you will receive Plan Provisions and an Owner Identification Card in the mail within three weeks of the vehicle delivery date. If you have any questions about the service contract, call the manufacturer's Service Contract National Customer Hotline at 1-800-521-9922 (Canadian residents, call (800) 465-2001 English / (800) 387-9983 French).

The manufacturer will not stand behind any service contract that is not the manufacturer's service contract. It is not responsible for any service contract other than the manufacturer's service contract. If you purchased a service contract that is not a manufacturer's service contract, and you require service after the manufacturer's New Vehicle Limited Warranty expires, please refer to the contract documents, and contact the person listed in those documents.

We appreciate that you have made a major investment when you purchased the vehicle. An authorized dealer has also made a major

investment in facilities, tools, and training to assure that you are absolutely delighted with the ownership experience. You will be pleased with their sincere efforts to resolve any warranty issues or related concerns.

### WARNING!

Engine exhaust (internal combustion engines only), some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain, or emit, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects, or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain, or emit, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects, or other reproductive harm.



## REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS

### In The 50 United States And Washington, D.C.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash or cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying FCA US LLC.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, an authorized dealer or FCA US LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); or go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or

write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., West Building, Washington, D.C. 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

### In Canada

If you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect, you should contact the Customer Service Department immediately. Canadian customers who wish to report a safety defect to the Canadian government should contact Transport Canada, Motor Vehicle Defect Investigations and Recalls at 1-800-333-0510 or go to <http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety/>.

## PUBLICATION ORDER FORMS

- You can purchase a copy of the Owner's Manual, Navigation/Uconnect Manuals or Warranty Booklet. United States customers

may visit the Ram Truck Contact Us page at [www.ramtrucks.com](http://www.ramtrucks.com) scroll to the bottom of the page and select the "Contact Us" link, then select the "Owner's Manual and Glove Compartment Material" from the left menu. You can also purchase a copy by calling 1-866-726-4636 (U.S.) or 1-800-387-1143 (Canada).

- Replacement User Guide kits or, if you prefer, additional printed copies of the Owner's Manual, Warranty Booklet or Radio Manuals may be purchased by visiting [www.techauthority.com](http://www.techauthority.com) or by calling 1-800-890-4038 (U.S.) or 1-800-387-1143 (Canada). Visa, Master Card, American Express and Discover orders are accepted.

### NOTE:

- The Owner's Manual and User Guide electronic files are also available on the Chrysler, Jeep, Ram Truck, Dodge and SRT websites.
- Click on the "Owners" tab, select "Owner And Service Manuals". Then select your desired model year and vehicle from the drop down lists.

# INDEX

|                                            |             |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Accessories . . . . .                      | 212         |
| Mopar . . . . .                            | 212         |
| Adding Fuel . . . . .                      | 136, 137    |
| Additives, Fuel . . . . .                  | 136         |
| Adjustable Pedals . . . . .                | 28          |
| Air Bag                                    |             |
| Air Bag Operation . . . . .                | 88          |
| Air Bag Warning Light . . . . .            | 85          |
| Enhanced Accident Response . . . . .       | 92, 167     |
| Event Data Recorder (EDR) . . . . .        | 167         |
| If Deployment Occurs . . . . .             | 92          |
| Knee Impact Bolsters . . . . .             | 88          |
| Maintaining Your Air Bag System . . . . .  | 93          |
| Maintenance . . . . .                      | 93          |
| Transporting Pets . . . . .                | 112         |
| Air Bag Light . . . . .                    | 59, 85, 113 |
| Air Cleaner, Engine                        |             |
| (Engine Air Cleaner Filter) . . . . .      | 180         |
| Air Conditioning . . . . .                 | 40          |
| Air Conditioning Filter . . . . .          | 42          |
| Air Conditioning, Operating Tips . . . . . | 41          |
| Air Filter . . . . .                       | 180         |
| Air Pressure                               |             |
| Tires . . . . .                            | 193         |

|                                               |          |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------|
| Alarm                                         |          |
| Panic . . . . .                               | 14       |
| Security Alarm . . . . .                      | 16, 60   |
| Android Auto . . . . .                        | 232, 269 |
| Antifreeze (Engine Coolant)                   |          |
| Capacities . . . . .                          | 206, 207 |
| Anti-Lock Warning Light . . . . .             | 64       |
| Apple CarPlay . . . . .                       | 236, 270 |
| Audio Jack . . . . .                          | 247      |
| Automatic Headlights . . . . .                | 31       |
| Automatic High Beams . . . . .                | 31       |
| Automatic Temperature Control (ATC) . . . . . | 41       |
| Automatic Transmission                        |          |
| Fluid Type . . . . .                          | 209, 211 |
| Shifting . . . . .                            | 128      |
| Axle Fluid . . . . .                          | 209, 211 |
| Back-Up . . . . .                             | 134      |
| Back-Up Camera . . . . .                      | 134      |
| Battery . . . . .                             | 60       |
| Charging System Light . . . . .               | 60       |
| Belts, Seat . . . . .                         | 113      |
| Body Builders Guide . . . . .                 | 2        |
| B-Pillar Location . . . . .                   | 189      |
| Brake Fluid . . . . .                         | 209      |

|                                            |          |
|--------------------------------------------|----------|
| Brake System                               |          |
| Warning Light . . . . .                    | 59       |
| Brake/Transmission Interlock . . . . .     | 127      |
| Bulb Replacement . . . . .                 | 150      |
| Bulbs, Light . . . . .                     | 115, 150 |
| Camera . . . . .                           | 134      |
| Camera, Rear . . . . .                     | 134      |
| Capacities, Antifreeze                     |          |
| (Engine Coolant) . . . . .                 | 206, 207 |
| Capacities, Fluid . . . . .                | 206, 207 |
| Caps, Filler                               |          |
| Oil (Engine) . . . . .                     | 178      |
| Carbon Monoxide Warning . . . . .          | 113      |
| Cargo Light . . . . .                      | 32       |
| Change Oil Indicator . . . . .             | 57       |
| Changing A Flat Tire . . . . .             | 156      |
| Chart, Tire Sizing . . . . .               | 186      |
| Checking Your Vehicle For Safety . . . . . | 112      |
| Checks, Safety . . . . .                   | 112      |
| Child Restraint . . . . .                  | 94       |
| Child Restraints                           |          |
| Booster Seats . . . . .                    | 97       |
| Child Seat Installation . . . . .          | 105, 106 |



- How To Stow An unused ALR Seat Belt . . . . .104
- Infant And Child Restraints . . . . .96
- Locating The LATCH Anchorages . . .102
- Lower Anchors And Tethers For Children . . . . .99
- Older Children And Child Restraints . . . . .97
- Seating Positions . . . . .98
- Cleaning
  - Wheels . . . . .199
- Climate Control . . . . .35
- Clock . . . . .223
- Clock Setting. . . . .223
- Compact Spare Tire . . . . .197
- Contract, Service . . . . .275
- Cooling System
  - Coolant Capacity . . . . .206, 207
  - Selection Of Coolant (Antifreeze) . . . . .208, 209
- Cruise Light . . . . .66
- Customer Assistance . . . . .274
- Customer Programmable Features . . .246
- Cybersecurity. . . . .215
- Dealer Service . . . . .180
- Defroster, Windshield. . . . .114
- Delay (Intermittent) Wipers . . . . .33
- Diagnostic System, Onboard . . . . .66
- Diesel Fuel System, Re-Priming . . . .184
- Disabled Vehicle Towing . . . . .165
- Disturb . . . . .259
- Do Not Disturb. . . . .269
- Door Ajar . . . . .61
- Door Ajar Light . . . . .61
- Doors . . . . .18
- Drag And Drop Menu . . . . .230
- Draining Fuel/Water Separator Filter. .181
- Driver's Seat Back Tilt . . . . .20
- Dual Rear Wheels . . . . .204, 205
- Electrical Power Outlets . . . . .47
- Electronically Shifted Transfer Case . .130
- Electronic Range Select (ERS) . . . . .129
- Electronic Speed Control (Cruise Control) . . . . .131
- Electronic Throttle Control Warning Light . . . . .61
- Emergency, In Case Of
  - Freeing Vehicle When Stuck . . . .164
  - Hazard Warning Flasher . . . . .150
  - Jacking . . . . .156
  - Jump Starting . . . . .160
- Engine . . . . .178, 179
- Air Cleaner . . . . .180
- Block Heater . . . . .122
- Break-In Recommendations . .125, 126
- Compartment . . . . .179
- Compartment Identification . . . . .178
- Coolant (Antifreeze) . . . . .208, 209
- Exhaust Gas Caution . . . . .113
- Identification . . . . .179
- Idling . . . . .123
- Jump Starting . . . . .160
- Oil . . . . .208, 209
- Oil Filler Cap . . . . .178
- Overheating . . . . .163
- Enhanced Accident Response
  - Feature . . . . .92, 167
- Exhaust Gas Cautions . . . . .113
- Exhaust System . . . . .113
- Exterior Lighting . . . . .29
- Exterior Lights . . . . .29, 115
- Filters
  - Air Conditioning . . . . .42
  - Engine Fuel . . . . .181, 208
  - Engine Oil . . . . .208, 209
- Flashers
  - Turn Signals . . . . .32, 65, 115
- Flat Tire Stowage . . . . .159

|                                         |          |
|-----------------------------------------|----------|
| Fluid, Brake . . . . .                  | 209      |
| Fluid Capacities . . . . .              | 206, 207 |
| Fluid Leaks . . . . .                   | 115      |
| Fluids And Lubricants . . . . .         | 208, 209 |
| Fold-Flat Seats . . . . .               | 20       |
| Four-Way Hazard Flasher . . . . .       | 150      |
| Four Wheel Drive . . . . .              | 130      |
| Freeing A Stuck Vehicle . . . . .       | 164      |
| Fuel . . . . .                          | 137      |
| Adding . . . . .                        | 136, 137 |
| Additives . . . . .                     | 136      |
| Diesel . . . . .                        | 137, 209 |
| Filter . . . . .                        | 181, 208 |
| Light . . . . .                         | 64       |
| Materials Added . . . . .               | 136      |
| Tank Capacity . . . . .                 | 206, 207 |
| Fuses . . . . .                         | 151      |
| Garage Door Opener (HomeLink) . . . . . | 43       |
| Gauges . . . . .                        |          |
| Voltmeter . . . . .                     | 123      |
| Gear Select Lever Override . . . . .    | 163      |
| General Information . . . . .           | 74, 247  |
| Guide . . . . .                         |          |
| Body Builders . . . . .                 | 2        |
| Hands-Free Phone (Uconnect) . . . . .   | 253      |

|                                                        |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Hazard Warning Flasher . . . . .                       | 150 |
| Headlights . . . . .                                   |     |
| Automatic . . . . .                                    | 31  |
| High Beam . . . . .                                    | 31  |
| High Beam/Low Beam Select<br>Switch . . . . .          | 31  |
| Switch . . . . .                                       | 29  |
| Head Restraints . . . . .                              | 24  |
| High Beam/Low Beam Select (Dimmer)<br>Switch . . . . . | 31  |
| Hoisting . . . . .                                     | 185 |
| HomeLink (Garage Door Opener) . . . . .                | 43  |
| Hood Prop . . . . .                                    | 42  |
| Hood Release . . . . .                                 | 42  |
| Hub Caps . . . . .                                     | 159 |
| Idle Up Feature . . . . .                              | 124 |
| Ignition . . . . .                                     | 14  |
| Switch . . . . .                                       | 14  |
| Instrument Cluster . . . . .                           |     |
| Descriptions . . . . .                                 | 65  |
| Integrated Trailer Brake Controls . . . . .            | 141 |
| Intermittent Wipers (Delay Wipers) . . . . .           | 33  |
| Intervention Regeneration Strategy . . . . .           | 53  |
| Introduction . . . . .                                 | 1   |

|                                        |             |
|----------------------------------------|-------------|
| Inverter . . . . .                     |             |
| Power . . . . .                        | 48          |
| Jacking And Tire Changing . . . . .    | 156         |
| Jack Location . . . . .                | 156         |
| Jack Operation . . . . .               | 156         |
| Jump Starting . . . . .                | 160         |
| Key Fob . . . . .                      |             |
| Panic Alarm . . . . .                  | 14          |
| Keyless Enter-N-Go . . . . .           | 18, 120     |
| Passive Entry . . . . .                | 18          |
| Passive Entry Programming . . . . .    | 18          |
| Keys . . . . .                         | 12          |
| Lane Change And Turn Signals . . . . . | 32          |
| Lane Change Assist . . . . .           | 32          |
| Latches . . . . .                      | 115         |
| Hood . . . . .                         | 42          |
| Leaks, Fluid . . . . .                 | 115         |
| Life Of Tires . . . . .                | 195         |
| Light Bulbs . . . . .                  | 115         |
| Lights . . . . .                       | 115         |
| Air Bag . . . . .                      | 59, 85, 113 |
| Automatic Headlights . . . . .         | 31          |
| Brake Warning . . . . .                | 59          |
| Bulb Replacement . . . . .             | 150         |



- Cargo . . . . .32
- Cruise . . . . .66
- Engine Temperature Warning . . . . .60
- Exterior . . . . .115
- Hazard Warning Flasher . . . . .150
- Headlights . . . . .29
- High Beam . . . . .31
- High Beam/Low Beam Select . . . . .31
- Low Fuel . . . . .64
- Malfunction Indicator
  - (Check Engine) . . . . .62
- Park . . . . .65
- Seat Belt Reminder . . . . .59
- Security Alarm . . . . .60
- Service . . . . .150
- Tire Pressure Monitoring
  - (TPMS) . . . . .63, 70
- Turn Signals . . . . .32, 65, 115
- Warning Instrument Cluster
  - Descriptions . . . . .60, 65
- Loading Vehicle
  - Tires . . . . .189
- Low Tire Pressure System . . . . .70
- Lug Nuts . . . . .159, 204, 205
- Maintenance Plan . . . . .174
- Maintenance Schedule . . .170, 173, 174
- Malfunction Indicator Light
  - (Check Engine). . . . .62
- Manual, Service . . . . .276
- Memory Feature (Memory Seats). . . . .20
- Memory Seat. . . . .20
- Memory Seats And Radio . . . . .20
- Mirrors . . . . .28
  - Memory . . . . .20
- Monitor, Tire Pressure System . . . . .70
- Mopar . . . . .212
- Mopar Accessories . . . . .212
- Multi-Function Control Lever . . . . .30
- Navigation . . . . .248
- Navigation System (Uconnect GPS) . .134
- New Vehicle Break-In Period . . .125, 126
- Occupant Restraints . . . . .75
- Oil Change Indicator. . . . .57, 173
- Oil Change Indicator, Reset. . . . .57
- Oil, Engine . . . . .208, 209
  - Capacity . . . . .206, 207
  - Filter . . . . .208, 209
  - Pressure Warning Light . . . . .61
- Oil Pressure Light. . . . .61
- Onboard Diagnostic System. . . . .66
- Operating Precautions . . . . .66
- Overheating, Engine . . . . .163
- Owner's Manual (Operator Manual) . .276
- Panic Alarm . . . . .14
- ParkSense System, Rear. . . . .133
- Passive Entry . . . . .18
- Pedals, Adjustable . . . . .28
- Perform Service Indicator, Reset . . .174
- Personalized Main Menu. . . . .230
- Pets . . . . .112
- Phonebook . . . . .258
- Phone, Hands-Free (Uconnect). . . . .253
- Phone (Pairing) . . . . .255
- Phone (Uconnect). . . . .253
- Placard, Tire And Loading
  - Information . . . . .189
- Power
  - Distribution Center (Fuses) . . . . .151
  - Inverter . . . . .48
  - Outlet (Auxiliary Electrical Outlet) . .47
- Power Steering Fluid . . . . .209
- Pregnant Women And Seat Belts. . . . .83
- Preparation For Jacking . . . . .156
- Radial Ply Tires . . . . .194
- Radio
  - Presets . . . . .217, 220, 224, 231

|                                               |            |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------|
| Radio 3.0 . . . . .                           | 216        |
| Radio Frequency                               |            |
| General Information . . . . .                 | 14, 16, 20 |
| Radio Operation . . . . .                     | 224, 229   |
| Radio Screens . . . . .                       | 229        |
| Radio (Sound Systems) . . . . .               | 224        |
| Rain Sensitive Wiper System . . . . .         | 33         |
| Rear ParkSense System . . . . .               | 133        |
| Recreational Towing. . . . .                  | 144        |
| Shifting Into Transfer Case                   |            |
| Neutral (N) . . . . .                         | 145        |
| Shifting Out Of Transfer Case                 |            |
| Neutral (N) . . . . .                         | 147        |
| Release, Hood . . . . .                       | 42         |
| Reminder, Seat Belt . . . . .                 | 76         |
| Remote Keyless Entry . . . . .                | 14         |
| Panic Alarm . . . . .                         | 14         |
| Remote Starting                               |            |
| Exit Remote Start Mode . . . . .              | 16         |
| Replacement Tires . . . . .                   | 195        |
| Reporting Safety Defects. . . . .             | 276        |
| Resetting Perform Service Indicator . . . . . | 174        |
| Restraint, Head . . . . .                     | 24         |
| Restraints, Child . . . . .                   | 94         |
| Safety Checks Inside Vehicle . . . . .        | 113        |
| Safety Checks Outside Vehicle . . . . .       | 115        |

|                                             |         |
|---------------------------------------------|---------|
| Safety Defects, Reporting . . . . .         | 276     |
| Safety, Exhaust Gas. . . . .                | 113     |
| Safety Information, Tire . . . . .          | 185     |
| Safety Tips . . . . .                       | 112     |
| Schedule, Maintenance . . . . .             | 170     |
| Seat Belt                                   |         |
| Adjustable Upper Shoulder Belt              |         |
| Anchorage . . . . .                         | 80      |
| Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) . . . . . | 83      |
| Lap/Shoulder Belt Operation . . . . .       | 78      |
| Seat Belt Reminder. . . . .                 | 59      |
| Seat Belts . . . . .                        | 76, 113 |
| Adjustable Shoulder Belt . . . . .          | 80      |
| Adjustable Upper Shoulder                   |         |
| Anchorage . . . . .                         | 80      |
| Child Restraints . . . . .                  | 94      |
| Extender . . . . .                          | 82      |
| Front Seat . . . . .                        | 76, 78  |
| Inspection . . . . .                        | 113     |
| Lap/Shoulder Belt Untwisting . . . . .      | 79      |
| Operating Instructions . . . . .            | 78      |
| Pregnant Women . . . . .                    | 83      |
| Reminder . . . . .                          | 76      |
| Seat Belt Extender . . . . .                | 82      |
| Untwisting Procedure . . . . .              | 79      |
| Seats . . . . .                             | 20      |
| Adjustment . . . . .                        | 20      |

|                                       |             |
|---------------------------------------|-------------|
| Easy Entry . . . . .                  | 22          |
| Memory . . . . .                      | 20          |
| Rear Folding . . . . .                | 20          |
| Tilting . . . . .                     | 20          |
| Security Alarm . . . . .              | 16, 60      |
| Selection Of Coolant                  |             |
| (Antifreeze). . . . .                 | 208, 209    |
| Service Assistance . . . . .          | 274         |
| Service Contract . . . . .            | 275         |
| Service Manuals . . . . .             | 276         |
| Shifting . . . . .                    | 126         |
| Automatic Transmission . . . . .      | 128         |
| Transfer Case, Shifting Into Transfer |             |
| Case Neutral (N) . . . . .            | 145         |
| Transfer Case, Shifting Out Of        |             |
| Transfer Case Neutral (N) . . . . .   | 147         |
| Shift Lever Override. . . . .         | 163         |
| Signals, Turn. . . . .                | 32, 65, 115 |
| Siri . . . . .                        | 269         |
| Sirius Satellite Radio                |             |
| Traffic & Weather . . . . .           | 252         |
| Sirius Travel Link . . . . .          | 252         |
| SiriusXM Guardian . . . . .           | 238         |
| Account . . . . .                     | 238         |
| App . . . . .                         | 240         |
| In Vehicle Features . . . . .         | 241         |
| Maintaining Your Account . . . . .    | 241         |



- Registration . . . . .239
- Remote Features . . . . .244
- Renewing Subscriptions . . . . .240
- Send & Go . . . . .245
- Vehicle Finder . . . . .245
- Vehicle Health Alert . . . . .267
- Snow Tires . . . . .197
- Spare Tires. . . . .197, 198
- Spark Plugs . . . . .208
- Speed Control
  - Accel/Decel . . . . .133
  - Cancel . . . . .133
  - Resume . . . . .133
- Speed Control (Cruise Control) . . . . .131
- Starting . . . . .118, 119
  - Button . . . . .14
  - Engine Block Heater . . . . .122
- Starting Procedures. . . . .119
- Starting Procedures (Diesel Engines) . .119
- Starting Procedures (Gas Engines). . .118
- Steering
  - Tilt Column . . . . .26
  - Wheel, Heated . . . . .26, 27
  - Wheel, Tilt . . . . .26
- Steering Wheel Mounted Sound System
  - Controls . . . . .247
- Storage, Vehicle . . . . .42
- Telescoping Steering Column . . . . .26
- Temperature Control, Automatic (ATC) . .41
- Text Messages . . . . .259
- Tilt Steering Column . . . . .26
- Tips . . . . .247
- Tire And Loading Information Placard . .189
- Tire Markings. . . . .185
- Tires. . . . .115, 192, 197, 200
  - Aging (Life Of Tires) . . . . .195
  - Air Pressure . . . . .192
  - Changing . . . . .156
  - Compact Spare . . . . .197
  - Dual . . . . .204, 205
  - General Information . . . . .192, 197
  - High Speed . . . . .193
  - Inflation Pressure . . . . .193
  - Jacking . . . . .156
  - Life Of Tires . . . . .195
  - Load Capacity . . . . .189
  - Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) . . . . .63
  - Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) . . .70
  - Quality Grading . . . . .200
  - Radial . . . . .194
  - Replacement . . . . .195
- Safety . . . . .185, 192
- Sizes . . . . .186
- Snow Tires . . . . .197
- Spare Tires . . . . .197, 198
- Spinning . . . . .194
- Tread Wear Indicators . . . . .195
- Wheel Nut Torque . . . . .159, 204
- Tire Safety Information. . . . .185
- To Open Hood . . . . .42
- Towing . . . . .140, 165
  - Disabled Vehicle . . . . .165
  - Guide . . . . .140
  - Recreational . . . . .144
  - Weight . . . . .140
- Towing Behind A Motorhome . . . . .144
- Trailer Towing . . . . .140
  - Minimum Requirements . . . . .140
- Trailer Towing Guide . . . . .140
- Trailer Weight . . . . .140
- Transfer Case
  - Electronically Shifted . . . . .130
  - Fluid . . . . .209, 211
- Transmission
  - Automatic . . . . .128
  - Fluid . . . . .209, 211
  - Shifting . . . . .126
- Transporting Pets . . . . .112

|                                                              |        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Tread Wear Indicators . . . . .                              | 195    |
| Turn Signals . . . . .                                       | 32, 65 |
| Uconnect 3.0 . . . . .                                       | 219    |
| Uconnect 4C/4C Nav With 8.4-Inch<br>Display . . . . .        | 229    |
| Uconnect (Hands-Free Phone)<br>Making A Phone Call . . . . . | 253    |
| Receiving A Call . . . . .                                   | 253    |
| Uconnect Phone . . . . .                                     | 253    |
| Uconnect Settings<br>Customer Programmable Features . . .    | 18     |
| Passive Entry Programming . . . . .                          | 18     |
| Uniform Tire Quality Grades . . . . .                        | 200    |
| Untwisting Procedure, Seat Belt . . . . .                    | 79     |

|                                                 |               |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| USB Port . . . . .                              | 247           |
| Vehicle Loading . . . . .                       | 189           |
| Vehicle Storage . . . . .                       | 42            |
| Vehicle User Guide<br>In Vehicle Help . . . . . | 11            |
| IVH . . . . .                                   | 11            |
| Navigation . . . . .                            | 11            |
| Operating Instructions . . . . .                | 11            |
| Searching User Guide . . . . .                  | 11            |
| Voice Command . . . . .                         | 259, 261      |
| Commands . . . . .                              | 258           |
| Voice Recognition<br>System (VR) . . . . .      | 258, 259, 261 |
| Voltmeter . . . . .                             | 123           |

|                                                               |        |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Warning Lights (Instrument Cluster<br>Descriptions) . . . . . | 63     |
| Washers, Windshield . . . . .                                 | 33     |
| Water Separator, Diesel Fuel . . . . .                        | 181    |
| Wheel And Wheel Tire Care . . . . .                           | 199    |
| Wheel And Wheel Tire Trim . . . . .                           | 199    |
| Wheel Cover . . . . .                                         | 159    |
| Wheel Nut Torque . . . . .                                    | 159    |
| Window Fogging . . . . .                                      | 42     |
| Windshield Defroster . . . . .                                | 114    |
| Windshield Washers . . . . .                                  | 32, 33 |
| Fluid . . . . .                                               | 32     |
| Windshield Wipers . . . . .                                   | 32     |
| Wipers, Intermittent . . . . .                                | 33     |
| Wipers, Rain Sensitive . . . . .                              | 33     |



---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, resulting in a collision and personal injury. FCA US LLC strongly recommends that the driver use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take their attention off the road. Use of any electrical devices, such as cellular telephones, computers, portable radios, vehicle navigation or other devices, by the driver while the vehicle is moving is dangerous and could lead to a serious collision. Texting while driving is also dangerous and should never be done while the vehicle is moving. If you find yourself unable to devote your full attention to vehicle operation, pull off the road to a safe location and stop your vehicle. Some states or provinces prohibit the use of cellular telephones or texting while driving. It is always the driver's responsibility to comply with all local laws.

This guide has been prepared to help you get quickly acquainted with your new RAM brand vehicle and to provide a convenient reference source for common questions. However, it is not a substitute for your Owner's Manual.

For complete operational instructions, maintenance procedures and important safety messages, please consult your Owner's Manual, Navigation/Uconnect manuals found on the website on the back cover and other Warning Labels in your vehicle.

Not all features shown in this guide may apply to your vehicle. For additional information on accessories to help personalize your vehicle, visit [www.mopar.com](http://www.mopar.com) (U.S.), [www.mopar.ca](http://www.mopar.ca) (Canada) or your local RAM brand dealer.

## **DRIVING AND ALCOHOL**

Drunken driving is one of the most frequent causes of collisions. Your driving ability can be seriously impaired with blood alcohol levels far below the legal minimum. If you are drinking, don't drive. Ride with a designated non-drinking driver, call a cab, a friend, or use public transportation.

## **WARNING**

Driving after drinking can lead to a collision. Your perceptions are less sharp, your reflexes are slower, and your judgment is impaired when you have been drinking. Never drink and then drive.





WHETHER IT'S PROVIDING INFORMATION ABOUT SPECIFIC PRODUCT FEATURES, TAKING A TOUR THROUGH YOUR VEHICLE'S HERITAGE, KNOWING WHAT STEPS TO

TAKE FOLLOWING AN ACCIDENT, OR SCHEDULING YOUR NEXT APPOINTMENT, WE KNOW YOU'LL FIND THE APP AN IMPORTANT EXTENSION OF YOUR RAM VEHICLE. SIMPLY DOWNLOAD THE APP, SELECT YOUR MAKE AND MODEL AND ENJOY THE RIDE. TO GET THIS APP, GO DIRECTLY TO THE APP STORE OR GOOGLE PLAY AND ENTER THE SEARCH KEYWORD "RAM TOOLBOX" (U.S. RESIDENTS ONLY).

[WWW.RAMTRUCKS.COM/EN/OWNERS](http://WWW.RAMTRUCKS.COM/EN/OWNERS) (U.S.) OR [WWW.OWNERS.MOPAR.CA](http://WWW.OWNERS.MOPAR.CA) (CANADA) PROVIDES SPECIAL OFFERS TAILORED TO YOUR NEEDS, CUSTOMIZED VEHICLE GALLERIES, PERSONALIZED SERVICE RECORDS AND MORE. TO GET THIS INFORMATION, JUST CREATE AN ACCOUNT AND CHECK BACK OFTEN.

GET WARRANTY AND OTHER INFORMATION ONLINE – YOU CAN REVIEW AND PRINT OR DOWNLOAD A COPY OF THE OWNER'S MANUAL, NAVIGATION/UCONNECT MANUALS AND THE LIMITED WARRANTIES PROVIDED BY FCA US LLC FOR YOUR VEHICLE BY VISITING [WWW.MOPAR.COM](http://WWW.MOPAR.COM) (U.S.) OR [WWW.OWNERS.MOPAR.CA](http://WWW.OWNERS.MOPAR.CA) (CANADA). CLICK ON THE APPLICABLE LINK IN THE "POPULAR TOPICS" AREA OF THE [WWW.MOPAR.COM](http://WWW.MOPAR.COM) (U.S.) OR [WWW.OWNERS.MOPAR.CA](http://WWW.OWNERS.MOPAR.CA) (CANADA) HOMEPAGE AND FOLLOW THE INSTRUCTIONS TO SELECT THE APPLICABLE YEAR, MAKE AND MODEL OF YOUR VEHICLE.

**DOWNLOAD A FREE ELECTRONIC COPY OF  
THE MOST UP-TO-DATE OWNER'S MANUAL, MEDIA  
AND WARRANTY BOOKLET BY VISITING:**

[WWW.MOPAR.COM/EN-US/CARE/OWNERS-MANUAL.HTML](http://WWW.MOPAR.COM/EN-US/CARE/OWNERS-MANUAL.HTML) (U.S. RESIDENTS);

[WWW.OWNERS.MOPAR.CA](http://WWW.OWNERS.MOPAR.CA) (CANADIAN RESIDENTS).



**RAM**  
COMMERCIAL

[RAMTRUCKS.COM](http://RAMTRUCKS.COM) (U.S.) [RAMTRUCKS.CA](http://RAMTRUCKS.CA) (CANADA)

©2021 FCA US LLC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. RAM IS A REGISTERED TRADEMARK OF FCA US LLC.

18-DPF\_UG\_EN\_USG  
RAM CHASSIS CAB  
FIFTH EDITION V1  
USER GUIDE

